

1 Thessalonians

translationNotes

v6

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License, which means

You are free:

- Share copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution You must attribute the work as follows: "Original work available at http://unfoldingword.org." Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from http://unfoldingword.org must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 6

Published: 2017-02-22

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
ranslationNotes	. 7
Introduction to 1 Thessalonians	. 7
1 Thessalonians 1 General Notes	. 13
1 Thessalonians 1:1	. 14
1 Thessalonians 1:2-3	. 16
1 Thessalonians 1:4-5	. 17
1 Thessalonians 1:6-7	. 19
1 Thessalonians 1:8-10	. 20
1 Thessalonians 2 General Notes	. 22
1 Thessalonians 2:1-2	. 23
1 Thessalonians 2:3-4	. 24
1 Thessalonians 2:5-6	. 25
1 Thessalonians 2:7-9	. 26
1 Thessalonians 2:10-12	. 28
1 Thessalonians 2:13	. 30
1 Thessalonians 2:14-16	. 31
1 Thessalonians 2:17-20	. 33
1 Thessalonians 3 General Notes	. 35
1 Thessalonians 3:1-3	. 36
1 Thessalonians 3:4-5	. 38
1 Thessalonians 3:6-7	. 39
1 Thessalonians 3:8-10	. 41
1 Thessalonians 3:11-13	. 43
1 Thessalonians 4 General Notes	. 45
1 Thessalonians 4:1-2	. 46
1 Thessalonians 4:3-6	. 47
1 Thessalonians 4:7-8	. 49
1 Thessalonians 4:9-12	. 50
1 Thessalonians 4:13-15	. 52
1 Thessalonians 4:16-18	. 54
1 Thessalonians 5 General Notes	. 56
1 Thessalonians 5:1-3	. 57
1 Thessalonians 5:4-7	. 59
1 Thessalonians 5:8-11	. 61
1 Thessalonians 5:12-14	. 63
1 Thessalonians 5:15-18	. 65
1 Thessalonians 5:19-22	. 66
1 Thessalonians 5:23-24	. 67
1 Thessalonians 5:25-28	. 68

Table of Contents

translationQuestions 69 1 Thessalonians 1 69 1 Thessalonians 2 70 1 Thessalonians 3 72 1 Thessalonians 4 74 1 Thessalonians 5 76 translationWords 78 afflict, affliction 78 amen, truly 79 angel, archangel 80 apostle, apostleship 82 believe, believe in, belief 83 blameless 84 bold, boldly, boldness 85 breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 86 call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 </th
1 Thessalonians 2 70 1 Thessalonians 3 72 1 Thessalonians 4 74 1 Thessalonians 5 76 translationWords 78 afflict, affliction 78 amen, truly 79 angel, archangel 80 apostle, apostleship 82 believe, believe in, belief 83 blameless 84 bold, boldly, boldness 85 breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 87 call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 faith 108 faithful
1 Thessalonians 3 72 1 Thessalonians 4 74 1 Thessalonians 5 76 translationWords 78 afflict, affliction 78 amen, truly 79 angel, archangel 80 apostle, apostleship 82 believe, believe in, belief 83 blameless 84 bold, boldly, boldness 85 breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 87 call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 se
1 Thessalonians 4 74 1 Thessalonians 5 76 translationWords 78 afflict, affliction 78 amen, truly 79 angel, archangel 80 apostle, apostleship 82 believe, believe in, belief 83 blameless 84 bold, boldly, boldness 85 breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 87 call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immoral
1 Thessalonians 5 76 translationWords 78 afflict, affliction 78 amen, truly 79 angel, archangel 80 apostle, apostleship 82 believe, believe in, belief 83 blameless 84 bold, boldly, boldness 85 breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 87 call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
translationWords 78 afflict, affliction 78 amen, truly 79 angel, archangel 80 apostle, apostleship 82 believe, believe in, belief 83 blameless 84 bold, boldly, boldness 85 breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 87 call, calling, called, call out 88 christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
afflict, affliction 78 amen, truly 79 angel, archangel 80 apostle, apostleship 82 believe, believe in, belief 83 blameless 84 bold, boldly, boldness 85 breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 86 call, calling, called, call out 88 christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
amen, truly 79 angel, archangel 80 apostle, apostleship 82 believe, believe in, belief 83 blameless 84 bold, boldly, boldness 85 breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 87 call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
angel, archangel 80 apostle, apostleship 82 believe, believe in, belief 83 blameless 84 bold, boldly, boldness 85 breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 87 call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
apostle, apostleship 82 believe, believe in, belief 83 blameless 84 bold, boldly, boldness 85 breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 87 call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
believe, believe in, belief 83 blameless 84 bold, boldly, boldness 85 breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 87 call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
blameless 84 bold, boldly, boldness 85 breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 87 call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
bold, boldly, boldness 85 breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 87 call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
breastplate, breastpiece 86 brother 87 call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
brother 87 call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
call, calling, called, call out 88 Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
Christ, Messiah 90 church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
church, Church 92 comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
comfort, comforter 94 confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
confidence, confident 95 crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
crown, to crown 96 darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
darkness 97 day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 98 death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
death, die, dead 99 deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive 101 destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
destiny, destine, destined 102 evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
evil, wicked, wickedness 103 exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
exhort, exhortation 105 face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness 110 sexual immorality 111
face 106 faith 108 faithful, faithfulness sexual immorality
faithful, faithfulness
faithful, faithfulness
sexual immorality
glory, glorious
God
godly, godliness
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
good, goodness
good news, gospel
grace, gracious
heart
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

holy, holiness
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
honor, to honor
idol, idolatrous
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
Jew, Jewish, Jews
joy, joyful
Judea
$kingdom\ \dots$
kiss
labor, laborer
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
letter, epistle
light
Lord
love
lust
Macedonia
Paul, Saul
peace, peaceful
Philippi
power, powers
pray, prayer
preach
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
quench
raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
receive
reject
rejoice
righteous, righteousness
salvation
sanctify, sanctification
Satan, devil, evil one
save, safe
serve, service
Silas, Silvanus
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
sleep, asleep, fall asleep
son, son of
Son of God, the Son, Son
spirit, spiritual
suffer, suffering

Table of Contents

tempt, temptation	183
test	184
testimony, testify	185
Thessalonica, Thessalonians	186
Timothy	
transgress, transgression	
trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness	
unclean	
walk	
watch, watchman	
will of God	
witness, eyewitness	
word	
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture	
works, deeds, work, acts	
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	
wrath, fury	
translationAcademy	
Abstract Nouns	
Active or Passive	
Double Negatives	
Doublet	
Ellipsis	
Euphemism	
Exclusive "We"	
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	
When Masculine Words Include Women	
Hendiadys	
Hyperbole	
Idiom	
Inclusive "We"	
Metaphor	
Metonymy	
Nominal Adjectives	
Parallelism	
Personification	
Reflexive Pronouns	
Rhetorical Question	
Simile	
Synecdoche	
Forms of You	
Translating Son and Father	
How to Translate Names	

Textual Variants																				26	3
Translate Unknowns																				26	6

translationNotes

Introduction to 1 Thessalonians

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of 1 Thessalonians

- 1. Greeting (1:1)
- 2. Prayer of thanksgiving for the Thessalonian Christians (1:2-10)
- 3. Paul's ministry in Thessalonica (2:1-16)
- 4. Paul's concerns for their spiritual growth
 - a) Like a mother (2:7)
 - b) Like a father (2:11)
- 5. Practical instructions
 - a) Live to please God (4:1-12)
 - b) Comfort regarding those who have died (4:12-18)
 - c) Christ's return is a motive for godly living (5:1-11)
- 6. Closing blessings, thanks, and prayers (5:12-22)

What is the Book of 1 Thessalonians about?

Paul wrote this letter to the believers in the city of Thessalonica after he had been forced by Jewish riots to suddenly leave the city. In this letter, he explains that in spite of that event, he viewed his visit to them as a success.

Paul is also responding in this letter to news about the Thessalonian believers that Timothy had brought him. He encourages the believers to live in a way that honors God, and in a way that they will be ready for Jesus Christ when he comes again in triumph.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "1 Thessalonians" or "First Thessalonians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's First Letter to the Church in Thessalonica," or "The First Letter to the Christians in Thessalonica." (See: How to Translate Names)

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What is the "second coming" of Jesus?

The Book of 1 Thessalonians focuses on Jesus' eventual return to Earth. At this time, Christ will judge all mankind; he will also begin his full rule as king, bringing peace to all creation.

What happens to those who die before the return of Christ?

There are many different interpretations of the events surrounding the return of Christ. What is universally understood about Paul's teaching here is that those who died before the return of Christ will enter into the Lord's presence. This news should encourage believers.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What does Paul mean by the expression "in Christ," "in the Lord," etc.?

Paul means to express the idea of very close union with Christ and the believers. Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of 1 Thessalonians?

The text of some English translations do not agree concerning what to include. This is because of the discovery of manuscripts that many believe are more accurate. The follow are the most significant issues in the Book of 1 Thessalonians:

- "Grace and peace to you." (1:1) The ULB, UDB, and most other modern versions have this reading. Some older versions have this reading: "Grace and peace to you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ."
- "Instead, we were as gentle among you as a mother comforting her own children." (2:7) The ULB, UDB, and many other modern versions have this reading. Other modern versions read, "Instead, we were like babies among you, as when a mother comforts her own children."
- "Timothy, our brother and fellow worker for God." (3:2) The ULB, UDB, and many other modern versions have this reading. Some other versions have this reading: "Timothy, our brother and servant of God."

(See: Textual Variants)

List of translationAcademy Topics in 1 Thessalonians

* Active or Passive is found in: 04:01, 05:25

* Double Negatives is found in: 02:01, 04:07, 04:13

* Doublet is found in: 02:07, 02:10, 03:06, 04:01, 04:03

* Ellipsis is found in: 02:05

* Euphemism is found in: 04:13, 05:08

* Exclusive "We" is found in: 01:02, 02:01, 03:11, 05:01

- * Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information is found in: 01:01, 02:03, 03:01, 03:04, 03:06, 04:03, 04:16
- * When Masculine Words Include Women is found in: 04:03

- * Hendiadys is found in: 02:10
- * Hyperbole is found in: 03:08
- * Idiom is found in: 03:01, 03:04, 03:08, 04:09
- * Inclusive "We" is found in: 01:08, 04:07, 04:13
- * Metaphor is found in: 01:08, 02:03, 02:07, 02:14, 03:08, 03:11, 04:01, 04:09, 05:04, 05:08, 05:19
- * Metonymy is found in: 01:01, 01:08, 02:17, 04:09
- * Parallelism is found in: 05:23
- * Personification is found in: 02:13
- * Reflexive Pronouns is found in: 01:08, 02:01, 03:11
- * Rhetorical Question is found in: 02:17, 03:08
- * Simile is found in: 02:07, 05:01, 05:04
- * Synecdoche is found in: 02:17, 03:08
- * Forms of You is found in: 01:01
- * Translating Son and Father is found in: 01:08
- * How to Translate Names is found in: 01:06, 01:08, 03:01

List of translationWords in 1 Thessalonians

- * afflict, affliction is found in: 03:04, 03:06
- * amen, truly is found in: 03:04
- * angel, archangel is found in: 04:16
- * apostle, apostleship is found in: 02:05
- * believe, believe in, belief is found in: 01:06, 02:10, 02:13, 04:13
- * blameless is found in: 02:10, 03:11
- * bold, boldly, boldness is found in: 02:01
- * breastplate, breastpiece is found in: 05:08
- * brother is found in: 01:04, 02:01, 02:07, 02:14, 02:17, 03:01, 03:06, 04:01, 04:09, 04:13, 05:01, 05:04, 05:12, 05:25
- * call, calling, called, call out is found in: 01:04, 02:10, 04:07, 05:23
- * Christ, Messiah is found in: 02:05, 03:01, 04:16
- * church, Church is found in: 01:01, 02:14
- * comfort, comforter is found in: 05:08
- * confidence, confident is found in: 02:17

- * crown, to crown is found in: 02:17
- * darkness is found in: 05:04
- * day of the Lord, day of Yahweh is found in: 05:01
- * death, die, dead is found in: 04:16
- * deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive is found in: 02:03
- * destiny, destine, destined is found in: 05:08
- * evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 05:15, 05:19
- * exhort, exhortation is found in: 02:03, 02:10, 04:01, 04:09, 05:12
- * face is found in: 02:17
- * faith is found in: 01:02, 01:08, 03:01, 03:04, 03:06, 03:08, 04:09, 05:08
- * faithful, faithfulness is found in: 05:23
- * sexual immorality is found in: 04:03
- * Gentile is found in: 02:14, 04:03
- * glory, glorious is found in: 02:05, 02:10, 02:17
- * God is found in: 01:02, 01:04, 01:08, 02:01, 02:03, 02:05, 02:07, 02:10, 02:13, 02:14, 03:01, 03:08, 03:11, 04:01, 04:03, 04:07, 04:09, 04:13, 04:16, 05:08, 05:23
- * God the Father, heavenly Father, Father is found in: 01:01, 03:11
- * good, goodness is found in: 03:01, 05:15, 05:19
- * good news, gospel is found in: 01:04, 02:01, 02:03, 02:07, 03:01
- * grace, gracious is found in: 01:01, 05:25
- * heart is found in: 02:03, 02:17, 03:11
- * heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 01:08, 04:16
- * holy, holiness is found in: 02:10, 03:11, 04:03, 04:07, 05:23, 05:25
- * Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord is found in: 01:04, 01:06, 04:07, 05:19
- * honor, to honor is found in: 04:03
- * idol, idolatrous is found in: 01:08
- * Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus is found in: 01:01, 01:02, 01:08, 02:14, 02:17, 03:11, 04:01, 04:13, 05:08, 05:15, 05:23, 05:25
- * Jew, Jewish, Jews is found in: 02:14
- * joy, joyful is found in: 01:06, 02:17, 03:08
- * Judea is found in: 02:14
- * kingdom is found in: 02:10

```
* kiss is found in: 05:25
```

* letter, epistle is found in: 05:25

* light is found in: 05:04

* Lord is found in: 01:01, 01:02, 01:06, 02:14, 02:17, 03:08, 03:11, 04:01, 04:16, 05:08, 05:12, 05:23, 05:25

* love is found in: 01:02, 03:06, 03:11, 04:09, 05:08, 05:12

* lust is found in: 04:03

* Macedonia is found in: 01:06, 01:08, 04:09

* Paul, Saul is found in: 01:01, 02:17

* peace, peaceful is found in: 01:01, 05:01, 05:12, 05:23

* Philippi is found in: 02:01

* power, powers is found in: 01:04

* pray, prayer is found in: 01:02, 03:08, 05:15, 05:25

* preach is found in: 02:07

* prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess is found in: 02:14, 05:19

* quench is found in: 05:19

* raise, rise, risen, arise, arose is found in: 01:08

* receive is found in: 01:06, 02:13, 04:01

* reject is found in: 04:07

* rejoice is found in: 05:15

* righteous, righteousness is found in: 02:10

* salvation is found in: 05:08

* sanctify, sanctification is found in: 04:03

* Satan, devil, evil one is found in: 02:17

* save, safe is found in: 02:14

* serve, service is found in: 01:08

* Silas, Silvanus is found in: 01:01

* sin, sinful, sinner, sinning is found in: 02:14

* sleep, asleep, fall asleep is found in: 04:13, 05:04

* son, son of is found in: 05:04, 05:08

* Son of God, the Son, Son is found in: 01:08

^{*} labor, laborer is found in: 01:02, 02:07, 03:04, 05:12

- * spirit, spiritual is found in: 05:23
- * suffer, suffering is found in: 02:01, 02:14, 03:01, 03:04
- * tempt, temptation is found in: 03:04
- * test is found in: 05:19
- * testimony, testify is found in: 02:10
- * Thessalonica, Thessalonians is found in: 01:01
- * Timothy is found in: 01:01, 03:01, 03:06
- * transgress, transgression is found in: 04:03
- * trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness is found in: 02:03
- * unclean is found in: 04:07
- * walk is found in: 02:10, 04:01, 04:09
- * watch, watchman is found in: 05:04
- * will of God is found in: 04:03, 05:15
- * witness, eyewitness is found in: 02:05, 02:10
- * word is found in: 01:06
- * word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture is found in: 01:08, 02:13, 04:13
- * works, deeds, work, acts is found in: 02:13, 05:12
- * worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless is found in: 02:10
- * wrath, fury is found in: 01:08, 02:14, 05:08

1 Thessalonians 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

1:1-3 forms a formal introduction to this letter. It was a common type of introduction for a letter in the ancient Near East.

Special concepts in this chapter

Tribulation

The Christians in Thessalonica were experiencing great persecution, but they handled it well. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

- 1 Thessalonians 01:01 Notes
- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians

1 Thessalonians 1:1 translationNotes

1 Thessalonians 1:1

UDB:

¹ I, Paul, am writing this letter. Silas and Timothy are with me. We are sending this letter to you who are the group of believers in the city of Thessalonica who are joined to God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ. May God be kind to you and give you peace.

ULB:

1 Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy to the church of the Thessalonians in God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ. May grace and peace be to you.[1]Some older versions read, *May grace and peace be to you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ*.

translationWords:

- Paul, Saul
- Silas, Silvanus
- Timothy
- church, Church
- Thessalonica, Thessalonians
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- grace, gracious
- peace, peaceful

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** Paul identifies himself as the writer of the letter and greets the church at Thessalonica.
- Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy to the church The UDB makes clear that it was Paul who wrote this letter. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- May grace and peace be to you The terms "grace" and "peace" are metonyms for the person who acts toward people in a kindly and peaceful manner. AT: "May God be kind to you and give you peace" (UDB). (See: Metonymy)
- peace be to you The word "you" refers to the Thessalonian believers. (See: Forms of You)

Links:

• Introduction to 1 Thessalonians

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 1:1

- 1 Thessalonians 01 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 01 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 1:2-3 translationNotes

1 Thessalonians 1:2-3

UDB:

² We always thank God for you all when we mention you while we pray. ³ We continually remember that you work for God, who is our Father, because you trust in him and you earnestly help people because you love them. You have a solid confidence in the future, because you know our Lord Jesus Christ!

ULB:

² We always give thanks to God for all of you, as we mention you in our prayers. ³ We remember without ceasing before our God and Father your work of faith, labor of love, and patient confidence for the future in our Lord Jesus Christ.

translationWords:

- God
- pray, prayer
- faith
- labor, laborer
- love
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** In this letter the words "we" and "us" refer to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy, unless otherwise noted. Also, the word "you" is plural and refers to the believers at the church of Thessalonica. (See: Exclusive "We" and Forms of You)
- We always give thanks to God Here "always" suggests that when Paul prays to God, he consistently presents the Thessalonians to God in his prayers.
- we mention you in our prayers "we pray for you"
- work of faith acts done because of trust in God

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 01 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 01 Translation Questions

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 1:4-5

1 Thessalonians 1:4-5

UDB:

⁴ My fellow believers whom God loves, we also thank him because we know that he chose you to become his people. ⁵ We know that he chose you because when we told the good news to you, it was much more than words only. The Holy Spirit powerfully worked among you, and he strongly assured us that our message to you was true. In the same way, you know how we spoke and how we conducted ourselves when we were with you, in order that we might help you.

ULB:

⁴ Brothers loved by God, we know he has chosen you, ⁵ because our gospel came to you not in word only, but also in power, in the Holy Spirit, and in much assurance. In the same way, you also know what kind of men we were among you for your sake.

translationWords:

- brother
- God
- call, calling, called, call out
- good news, gospel
- power, powers
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** Paul continues to give thanks for the believers at Thessalonica and praises them for their faith in God.
- Brothers Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- we know The word "we" refers to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy but not the Thessalonian believers. (See Exclusive "We")
- not in word only Not only through the activity of preaching God's message.
- but also in power, in the Holy Spirit Possible meanings are 1) the Holy Spirit gave Paul and his companions the ability to preach the gospel powerfully or 2) the Holy Spirit made the preaching of the gospel have a powerful effect among the Thessalonian believers or 3) the Holy Spirit demonstrated the truth of the gospel preaching by means of miracles, signs, and wonders.
- what kind of men "how we conducted ourselves when" (UDB)

1 Thessalonians 1:4-5 translationNotes

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 01 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 01 Translation Questions

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7

1 Thessalonians 1:6-7

UDB:

⁶ We have now heard that you are living like we live and are following our example. But more important, you are also living like our Lord lived. You received the message of God's love with great joy that only comes from the Holy Spirit, even though you had to go through many trials and difficulties. ⁷ All the believers who are in the provinces of Macedonia and Achaia are learning how they should trust God just like you have learned and as you are trusting him.

ULB:

⁶ You became imitators of us and of the Lord, as you received the word in much hardship with joy from the Holy Spirit. ⁷ As a result, you became an example to all in Macedonia and Achaia who believe.

translationWords:

- Lord
- receive
- word
- joy, joyful
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- Macedonia
- believe, believe in, belief

translationNotes:

- You became imitators To "imitate" means to act like or to copy the behavior of another.
- received the word "welcomed the teaching" or "accepted the teaching"
- in much hardship "during a time of great suffering" or "in much persecution"
- Achaia This is an ancient district in what is present-day Greece. (See: How to Translate Names)

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 01 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 01 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 1:8-10 translationNotes

1 Thessalonians 1:8-10

UDB:

⁸ Other people have heard you tell the message from the Lord Jesus. Then they also proclaimed the good news to people who live throughout Macedonia and Achaia. Not only that, but people who live in many faraway places have heard that you trust in God. So we do not need to tell people what God has done in your lives. ⁹ People who live far from you are telling others how warmly you welcomed us when we came to you. They also report that you stopped worshiping false gods and that now you worship and serve the God who alone is the living God, and he is the real and only God. ¹⁰ They also tell us that now you wait expectantly for his Son to return to earth from heaven. You firmly believe that God caused him to live again after he died. You believe also that Jesus will rescue all of us, who trust in him, when God punishes all the people of the entire world.

ULB:

⁸ For from you the word of the Lord has rung out, and not only in Macedonia and Achaia. Instead, to every place your faith in God has gone out. As a result, we do not need to say anything. ⁹ For they themselves report what kind of coming we had among you. They tell how you turned to God from the idols to serve the living and true God. ¹⁰ They report that you are waiting for his Son from heaven, whom he raised from the dead ones. This is Jesus, who frees us from the wrath to come.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Macedonia
- faith
- God
- idol, idolatrous
- serve, service
- Son of God, the Son, Son
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- wrath, fury

translationNotes:

• has rung out - Here Paul speaks of the Christian witness produced by the Thessalonian believers as if it were a bell that was rung or a musical instrument that was being played. (See: Metaphor)

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10

• Achaia - This is an ancient district in what is now present-day Greece. (See: How to Translate Names)

- For they themselves ... They tell ... They report Paul is referring to the churches that already existed in the surrounding regions, who have heard about the Thessalonian believers.
- **they themselves** Here "themselves" is used to emphasize those people who had heard about the Thessalonian believers. (See: Reflexive Pronouns)
- what kind of coming we had among you Here "coming" stands for the enthusiastic welcome experienced by Paul and his companions. AT: "how warmly you welcomed us" (UDB) (See: Metonymy)
- **his Son** This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: Translating Son and Father)
- whom he raised "whom God raised"
- from the dead ones From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld.
- who frees us Here Paul includes the Thessalonian believers. (See: Inclusive "We")

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 01 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 01 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 2 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Christian witness

Paul values his "christian witness" as evidence for the truth of the gospel. The godliness or holiness of a Christian is said to bear witness to the non-Christian. Paul defends himself against attacks against his character, so that his witness is not tainted. (See: witness, eyewitness, godly, godliness and holy, holiness)

Christian living

Under the law of Moses, people were required to offer sacrifices of animals or grain in the temple. Since physical sacrifices are no longer required, Christians are required to live their lives as a type of sacrifice to God. (See: law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh)

Links:

• 1 Thessalonians 02:01 Notes

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 2:1-2

1 Thessalonians 2:1-2

UDB:

¹ My fellow believers, you know that our time with you was very worthwhile. ² Although people in Philippi city previously mistreated us and insulted us, as you know, God caused us to be courageous. As a result, we told you the good news that God sent us to tell you, even though some people in your city opposed us very much.

ULB:

2 ¹ For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was not useless. ² You know that we previously suffered and were shamefully treated at Philippi. We were bold in our God to speak to you the gospel of God in much struggling.

translationWords:

- brother
- suffer, suffering
- Philippi
- bold, boldly, boldness
- God
- good news, gospel

translationNotes:

- Connecting Statement: Paul defines the believers' service and reward.
- you yourselves The words "you" and "yourselves" refer to the Thessalonian believers. (See: Reflexive Pronouns)
- brothers Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- **our coming** The word "our" refers to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy but not the Thessalonian believers. (See: Exclusive "We")
- was not useless This can be expressed in a positive manner. AT: "was very worthwhile" (See: Double Negatives)
- previously suffered and were shamefully treated "were mistreated and insulted"
- in much struggling "while struggling under great opposition"

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 02 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 02 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 2:3-4 translationNotes

1 Thessalonians 2:3-4

UDB:

³ When we encouraged you to obey God's message, we did not speak to you something false. And we do not want to get something for ourselves by immoral means. We do not try to deceive you or anyone else. ⁴ On the contrary, God trusted us to tell you the good news, because he had examined us and considered us to be the right people to do this work. As we teach people, we do not say what they like to hear. Instead, we say what God wants us to say, because he judges everything that we think.

ULB:

³ For our exhortation was not from error, nor from impurity, nor from deceit. ⁴ Instead, just as we have been approved by God to be trusted with the gospel, so we speak. We speak, not to please men, but to please God. He is the one who examines our hearts.

translationWords:

- exhort, exhortation
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- God
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- good news, gospel
- heart

translationNotes:

- was not from error, nor from impurity, nor from deceit "was truthful, pure, and honest"
- approved by God to be trusted Paul was tested and proven trustworthy by God.
- We speak Paul is referring to preaching the gospel message. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- who examines our hearts The word "hearts" is a metaphor for a person's desires and thoughts. AT: "who knows our desires and thoughts" (See: Metaphor)

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 02 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 02 Translation Questions

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 2:5-6

1 Thessalonians 2:5-6

UDB:

⁵ You know that we never praised you in order to get anything from you. And we never said anything to you to convince you to give us things. God knows that this is true! ⁶ Neither did we ever try to get you or anyone else to honor us, although we could have demanded that you give us things because Christ had sent us to you.

ULB:

⁵ For we did not at any time use words as flattery, as you know, nor as a pretext for covetousness, as God is our witness. ⁶ Nor did we seek glory from people, either from you or from others. We could have claimed privileges as apostles of Christ.

translationWords:

- God
- witness, eyewitness
- glory, glorious
- apostle, apostleship
- Christ, Messiah

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** Paul tells the Thessalonian believers that his conduct was not based in flattery, greed, or self glory.
- use words as flattery "speak to you with false praise"
- **nor as a pretext for covetousness** "nor did we use words to hide an evil desire for your money" (See: Ellipsis)
- could have claimed privileges "could have insisted you give us money"

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 02 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 02 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 2:7-9 translationNotes

1 Thessalonians 2:7-9

UDB:

⁷ On the contrary, we were gentle when we were among you, as a mother gently takes care of her own children. ⁸ So, because we love you, we were delighted to personally tell you the good message that God gave us. But also we were delighted to do all that we could do to help you because we began to love you very much. ⁹ My fellow believers, you remember that we worked hard during the day and also at night. This is how we earned money, so that we would not have to ask any one of you to give us what we needed. We did this while we proclaimed to you the good news about God.

ULB:

⁷ Instead, we were as gentle among you as a mother comforting her own children.[1]Some other versions read, *Instead, we were like babies among you, as when a mother comforts her own children.*⁸ In this way we had affection for you. We were pleased to share with you not only the gospel of God but also our own lives. For you had become very dear to us. ⁹ For you remember, brothers, our labor and toil. Night and day we were working so that we might not weigh down any of you. During that time, we preached to you the gospel of God.

translationWords:

- good news, gospel
- God
- brother
- labor, laborer
- preach

translationNotes:

- **as a mother comforting her own children** Just as a mother gently comforts her children, so Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy spoke gently to the Thessalonian believers. (See: Simile)
- In this way we had affection for you "This is how we demonstrated our affection for you"
- we had affection for you "we loved you"
- We were pleased to share with you not only the gospel of God Paul refers to the gospel message as if it were a physical object that one can share with others. By "sharing," he means "telling" (See: Metaphor)
- We were pleased to share with you ... our own lives Paul refers to his and his colleagues' lives as if they were physical objects that they could share with others. Here he means spending time and effort with his audience. (See: Metaphor)
- you had become very dear to us "we cared for you deeply"

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 2:7-9

- brothers Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- our labor and toil The words "labor" and "toil" mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them to emphasize how hard they worked. AT: "how hard we worked" (See: Doublet)

• Night and day we were working so that we might not weigh down any of you - "We worked hard to make our own living so you would not need to support us"

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 02 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 02 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 2:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ Both you and God know that we lived toward you believers in a very good and right way—in a way that no one could criticize. ¹¹ You know also that we behaved toward each one of you as a father who loves his children behaves toward them. ¹² We kept strongly exhorting and encouraging you to live like God's people should, because he has called you to become his people to whom he will show himself as king with the most wonderful power.

ULB:

¹⁰ You are witnesses, and God also, how holy, righteously, and blamelessly we behaved ourselves toward you who believe. ¹¹ In the same way you know how we dealt with each one of you as a father deals with his own children, ¹² we were begging you and encouraging and urging you to walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into his own kingdom and glory.

translationWords:

- witness, eyewitness
- God
- holy, holiness
- righteous, righteousness
- blameless
- believe, believe in, belief
- exhort, exhortation
- testimony, testify
- walk
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- call, calling, called, call out
- kingdom
- glory, glorious

translationNotes:

- holy, righteously, and blamelessly Paul uses three words that describe their good behavior toward the Thessalonian believers.
- as a father deals with his own children Paul compares how he encouraged the Thessalonians to a father gently teaching his children how to behave. (See: Metaphor)
- we were begging you and encouraging and urging you The words "begging," "encouraging," and "urging" are used together to express how passionately Paul's group encouraged the Thessalonians. AT: "we were strongly encouraging you" (See: Doublet)

• into his own kingdom and glory - The word "glory" describes the word "kingdom." AT: "into his own glorious kingdom" (See: Hendiadys)

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 02 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 02 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 2:13 translationNotes

1 Thessalonians 2:13

UDB:

¹³ This is why we always thank God, because when you heard the message that we told to you, you accepted it as the true message, the good message that God gave to us. We ourselves did not invent it. We also thank God that he is changing your lives because you trust this message.

ULB:

¹³ For this reason we also thank God constantly. For when you received from us God's message that you heard, you accepted it not as the word of man. Instead, you received it as it truly is, the word of God. It is this word that is also at work among you who believe.

translationWords:

- God
- receive
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- works, deeds, work, acts
- believe, believe in, belief

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** Paul continues to use "we" to refer to himself and his traveling companions and "you" to the Thessalonian believers.
- we also thank God constantly Paul often thanks God for their acceptance of the gospel message he shared with them.
- you received it as it truly is, the word of God The Thessalonians believed Paul's message as coming from God, not from Paul's own authority.
- It is this word that is also at work among you who believe Paul speaks of God's gospel message as if it were a person who was doing work. (See: Personification)

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 02 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 02 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 2:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ We are certain about these things, because you acted just like the groups of believers in Judea acted. They also are joined to Christ Jesus, and, just as they endured it when their fellow countrymen mistreated them because of Christ, in the same way you have endured it when your own fellow countrymen mistreat you. ¹⁵ Those Jews had killed the Lord Jesus and many prophets, too. Other unbelieving Jews forced us to leave many towns. They really make God angry, and they work against what is best for all human beings! ¹⁶ For example, they try to stop us from telling the good news to non-Jews; they do not want God to save them! They have sinned almost as much as God will allow them to before he punishes them at last!

ULB:

¹⁴ For you, brothers, became imitators of the churches of God that are in Judea in Christ Jesus. For you also suffered the same things from your own countrymen, as they did from the Jews. ¹⁵ It was the Jews who killed both the Lord Jesus and the prophets. It was the Jews who drove us out. They do not please God. Instead, they are hostile to all people. ¹⁶ They forbid us to speak to the Gentiles for them to be saved. The result is that they always fill up their own sins. Wrath must come on them in the end.

translationWords:

- brother
- church, Church
- God
- Judea
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- suffer, suffering
- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- Lord
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Gentile
- save, safe
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- wrath, fury

translationNotes:

• brothers - Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

- **became imitators of the churches** The Thessalonian believers endured persecutions similar to the Judean believers. "became like the churches"
- from your own countrymen "from other Thessalonians"
- They forbid us to speak "They try to make us stop speaking"
- they always fill up their own sins Paul speaks as though someone can fill a container with their own sins as with liquid. (See: Metaphor)
- Wrath must come on them in the end This refers to God finally judging and punishing people for their sins.

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 02 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 02 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 2:17-20

UDB:

¹⁷ My fellow believers, when we had to be away from you for a short time, we felt like parents who had lost their children. We strongly desired to be present with you. ¹⁸ Indeed I, Paul, tried to return several times to see you. But each time Satan prevented us from returning. ¹⁹ Indeed, it is because of you that we hope to do God's work well; it is you who make us proud; it is because of you that we hope to succeed in serving God. It is because of you as well as others that we hope that the Lord Jesus will reward us when he returns to earth. ²⁰ Indeed, it is because of you that even now we are pleased and are joyful!

ULB:

¹⁷ We were separated from you, brothers, for a short time, in person not in heart. We were especially eager, with great desire, to see your face. ¹⁸ For we wished to come to you, I, Paul, once and again, but Satan stopped us. ¹⁹ For what is our confidence for the future, or joy, or crown of pride in front of our Lord Jesus at his coming? Is it not you just as much as others? ²⁰ For you are our glory and our joy.

translationWords:

- brother
- heart
- face
- Paul, Saul
- Satan, devil, evil one
- confidence, confident
- joy, joyful
- crown, to crown
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- glory, glorious

translationNotes:

- **brothers** This means fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- in person not in heart Though Paul is not present physically in Thessalonica, he is emotionally attached to them.
- **to see your face** Here "your face" means the entire person. AT: "to see you" or "to be with you" (See: Synecdoche)
- I, Paul, once and again "I, Paul, tried several times"

- For what is our confidence ... at his coming? Paul uses this question to encourage the believers and answers it in the next verse. This rhetorical question can be positively stated. AT: "You are our confidence for the future, our joy, and our crown of glory when our Lord Jesus Christ comes" (See: Rhetorical Question)
- our confidence for the future ... Is it not you By "confidence" Paul means the assurance he has that God will reward him for his work. The Thessalonian Christians are the reason for his confidence. (See: Metonymy)
- or joy The Thessalonians are the reason for his joy. (See: Metonymy)
- **crown of pride** Here "crown" refers to a laurel wreath awarded to victorious athletes. The expression "crown of pride" means a reward for victory, or having done well. (See: Metonymy)
- Is it not you just as much as others? This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "It is you and other believers" (See: Rhetorical Question)

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 02 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 02 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 3 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Standing

In this chapter, standing is used as a way to illustrate steadfastness. This is common way to describe steadfastness or faithfulness. The opposite of steadfastness is described as "shaking" in this chapter. (See: faithful, faithfulness)

Links:

• 1 Thessalonians 03:01 Notes

1 Thessalonians 3:1-3 translationNotes

1 Thessalonians 3:1-3

UDB:

¹ As a result of that, when I could no longer endure worrying about you, I decided that Silas and I would stay behind alone in the city of Athens, ² and we sent Timothy to you. You know that he is our close associate and also works for God by proclaiming the good news about Christ. Silas and I sent him in order that he would urge you to continue to strongly trust in Christ. ³ We did not want any of you to turn away from Christ in fear because of what you were suffering. You well know that God knew that others would mistreat us because of Christ.

ULB:

3 ¹ Therefore, when we could no longer bear it, we thought it was good to be left behind at Athens alone. ² We sent Timothy, our brother and fellow worker for God in the gospel of Christ, to strengthen and comfort you regarding your faith.[1]Some other versions read, *We sent Timothy, our brother and God's servant in the gospel of Christ.* ³ We did this so that no one would be shaken by these sufferings. For yourselves know that for this we have been appointed.

translationWords:

- good, goodness
- Timothy
- brother
- God
- good news, gospel
- Christ, Messiah
- faith
- suffer, suffering

- **Connecting Statement:** Paul tells the believers he has sent Timothy to strengthen their faith.
- we could no longer bear it "we could no longer endure worrying about you"
- good to be left behind at Athens alone "good for Silvanus and me to stay behind in Athens"
- good "proper" or "reasonable"
- Athens This is a city in the Achaia province, which is now modern-day Greece. (See: How to Translate Names)
- our brother and fellow worker These two expressions both describe Timothy.
- **no one would be shaken** To be "shaken" is an idiom for being afraid. AT: "no one would be frightened away from trusting in Christ" (See: Idiom)

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 3:1-3

• we have been appointed - Paul assumes that everyone knows that it was God who appointed them. This can be made explicit. AT: "God has appointed us" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 03 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 03 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 3:4-5 translationNotes

1 Thessalonians 3:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Remember that when we were present with you, we kept telling you that others would mistreat us. And this is what happened! ⁵ This is why I sent Timothy to you: because I could wait no longer to know whether you were still trusting in Christ. I was afraid that Satan, the one who tempts us, had caused you to stop trusting in Christ. I was afraid that everything we had done with you was useless.

ULB:

⁴ Truly, when we were with you, we told you in advance that we were about to suffer affliction, and that happened, as you know. ⁵ For this reason, when I could no longer stand it, I sent that I might know about your faith. Perhaps the tempter had somehow tempted you, and our labor was in vain.

translationWords:

- amen, truly
- suffer, suffering
- afflict, affliction
- faith
- tempt, temptation
- labor, laborer

translationNotes:

- Truly "Certainly" or "Surely"
- to suffer affliction "to be mistreated by others"
- I could no longer stand it Paul was describing his own emotions by using an idiom. AT: "I could not longer wait patiently" (See: Idiom)
- I sent It is implied that Paul sent Timothy. This can be made explicit. AT: "I sent Timothy" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- our labor "our hard work among you" or "our teaching among you"
- in vain "useless"

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 03 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 03 Translation Questions

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 3:6-7

1 Thessalonians 3:6-7

UDB:

⁶ But now Timothy has just returned to Silas and me from being with you, and he has told us the good news that you still trust in Christ and that you love him. He told us also that you always happily remember us and that you want very much us to visit you, just as we want to visit you. ⁷ My fellow believers, even though we are suffering very much because of what people are doing to us here, we have been comforted because Timothy told us that you still trust in Christ.

ULB:

⁶ But Timothy came to us from you and brought us the good news of your faith and love. He told us that you always have good memories of us, and that you long to see us just as we also long to see you. ⁷ Because of this, brothers, we were comforted by you because of your faith, in all our distress and affliction.

translationWords:

- Timothy
- faith
- love
- brother
- afflict, affliction

- **Connecting Statement:** Paul tells his readers about Timothy's report after he returned from visiting them.
- came to us The word "us" refers to Paul and Silvanus. (See Exclusive "We")
- the good news of your faith It is understood that this refers to faith in Christ. This can be made explicit. AT: "a good report of your faith" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- you always have good memories When they think of Paul, they always have good thoughts about him.
- you long to see us "you desire to see us"
- brothers Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.
- **because of your faith** This refers to faith in Christ. This can be made explicit. AT: "because of your faith in Christ" (See Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- in all our distress and affliction The word "affliction" explains why they are in "distress." AT: "in all our distress caused by our afflictions" (See: Doublet)

1 Thessalonians 3:6-7 translationNotes

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 03 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 03 Translation Questions

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 3:8-10

1 Thessalonians 3:8-10

UDB:

⁸ Now it is as if we are living in a new way, because you are trusting very much in the Lord Jesus. ⁹ We cannot thank God enough for what he has done for you! We greatly rejoice over you when we pray to our God! ¹⁰ We constantly and fervently ask God that we will be able to visit you, and that we will be able to help you to trust in Christ more strongly!

ULB:

⁸ For now we live, if you stand firm in the Lord. ⁹ For what thanks can we give to God for you, for all the joy that we have before our God over you? ¹⁰ Night and day we pray very hard that we may see your face and provide what is lacking in your faith.

translationWords:

- Lord
- God
- joy, joyful
- pray, prayer
- faith

- we live This is an idiom that expresses living a satisfied life. AT: "we are very encouraged" (See: Idiom)
- **if you stand firm in the Lord** To "stand firm" is an idiom meaning to continue being faithful. AT: "if you continue to trust in the Lord" (See Idiom)
- For what thanks can we give to God for you, for all the joy that we have before our God over you? This rhetorical question can be expressed as a statement. AT: "We cannot thank God enough for what he has done for you! We greatly rejoice over you when we pray to our God!" (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **before our God** Paul speaks as if he and his companions were physically in God's presence. He is probably referring to the activity of praying. (See: Metaphor)
- **Night and day** Here an exaggeration is used to show how often Paul prays. AT: "Frequently" (See: Hyperbole)
- very hard "fervently"
- **see your face** The word "face" refers to their whole person. AT: "visit you" (See: Synecdoche)

1 Thessalonians 3:8-10 translationNotes

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 03 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 03 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 3:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ We pray to God, our Father, and to our Lord Jesus, that they will enable us to return to you. ¹² As for you, we pray that the Lord Jesus will help you to love each other and other people more and more, just like we continue loving you more and more. ¹³ We pray that our Lord Jesus will make you want to please him more and more. We pray that God our Father will enable you to become more like him, and that no one can criticize. We pray this, so that when Jesus comes back to earth and all those who belong to him come with him, he will be pleased with you.

ULB:

¹¹ May our God and Father himself, and our Lord Jesus, direct our way to you. ¹² May the Lord make you increase and abound in love one for another and toward all people, as we also do for you. ¹³ May he strengthen your hearts, so that they will be blameless in holiness before our God and Father, at the coming of our Lord Jesus with all his holy ones.

translationWords:

- God
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- love
- heart
- blameless
- holy, holiness

- **General Information:** In these verses, the word "our" does not always refer to the same group of people. Please see the translation notes for specifics.
- May our God ... our Lord Jesus Paul includes the Thessalonian believers with his ministry team. (See Inclusive "We")
- May our God "We pray that our God"
- **direct our way to you** Paul speaks as if he wants God to show him and his companions the route to take to visit the Thessalonian Christians. He means that he wants God to make it possible for them to do so. (See Metaphor)
- **direct our way to you** The word "our" refers to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy but not the Thessalonian believers. (See: Exclusive "We")

- Father himself Here "himself" refers back to "Father" for emphasis. (See: Reflexive Pronouns)
- increase and abound in love Paul speaks of love as an object that one could obtain more of. (See: Metaphor)
- **strengthen your hearts** Paul refers to the "heart" as the center of one's beliefs and convictions. (See: Metaphor)
- at the coming of our Lord Jesus "when Jesus comes back to earth"
- with all his holy ones "with all those who belong to him"

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 03 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 03 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 4 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Sexual immorality

Different cultures have different standard of sexual morality. These different cultural standards may present difficulties in translation. Translators must also be aware of cultural taboos, topics that are considered improper to talk about.

Dying before the return of Christ

In the early church, people wondered what would happen if a person died before the return of Christ. They may have worried whether those dying before the return of Christ would get to partake of the kingdom of God.

"Caught up in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air"

Many scholars believe this passage refers to an event known as the "rapture." This is a time when Jesus calls those who believe in him to himself. For those who hold this viewhe timing of this event is the matter of much speculation. (See: believe, believe in, belief)

Links:

• 1 Thessalonians 04:01 Notes

1 Thessalonians 4:1-2 translationNotes

1 Thessalonians 4:1-2

UDB:

1-2 Now, my fellow believers, I want to write about some other matters. I urge you—and when I urge you, it is the same as the Lord Jesus himself urging you—to conduct your lives in a way that pleases God. We taught you to do that because of what the Lord Jesus had told us to say. We know that you are conducting your lives that way, but we strongly urge that you do that even more.

ULB:

4 ¹ Finally, brothers, we encourage and exhort you in the Lord Jesus. As you received instructions from us about how you must walk and please God, also in this way walk, so that you do so even more. ² For you know what instructions we gave you through the Lord Jesus.

translationWords:

- brother
- exhort, exhortation
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- receive
- walk
- God

translationNotes:

- brothers Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.
- we encourage and exhort you Paul uses "encourage" and "exhort" to emphasize how strongly they encourage the believers. AT: "we strongly encourage you" (See: Doublet)
- you received instructions from us This can be stated in active form. AT: "we taught you" (See: Active or Passive)
- you must walk Here "walk" is an expression for the way one is to live. AT: "you ought to live" (See: Metaphor)
- through the Lord Jesus Paul speaks of his instructions as if they were given by Jesus himself. (See: Metaphor)

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 04 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 04 Translation Questions

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6

1 Thessalonians 4:3-6

UDB:

³ God wants you to do no sin, living in a way that will show that you completely belong to him. He wants you to avoid doing any sexually immoral acts. ⁴ That is, he wants each one of you to know how to live with your wife, in a way that honors her and you do not sin against her. ⁵ You must not use her to satisfy your lustful desires (as non-Jews do because they do not know God). ⁶ God wants each one of you to control your sexual desires, in order that no one of you sin against your fellow believer and take advantage of him or her by doing things like that. Remember that we strongly warned you previously that the Lord Jesus will punish all people who commit sexually immoral acts.

ULB:

³ For this is the will of God, your sanctification, that you avoid sexual immorality, ⁴ that each of you know how to possess his own vessel in holiness and honor, ⁵ not in the passion of lust (as the Gentiles who do not know God). ⁶ Let no man transgress and wrong his brother in this matter. For the Lord is an avenger in all these things, just as we forewarned you and testified.

translationWords:

- will of God
- sanctify, sanctification
- sexual immorality
- holy, holiness
- honor, to honor
- lust
- Gentile
- God
- transgress, transgression

- you avoid sexual immorality "you stay away from sexually immoral acts"
- **know how to possess** Possible meanings are 1) how to live with your wife or 2) how to live a self-discipline life or 3) how to live with your virgin daughter.
- in the passion of lust "with wrongful sexual desire"
- **no man** Here "man" refers to a man or a woman. "no one" or "no person" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)
- **transgress and wrong** This is a doublet stating the same idea in two ways to reinforce the concept. AT: "wrong" (See: Doublet)

1 Thessalonians 4:3-6 translationNotes

• the Lord is an avenger - This can be made explicit. AT: "the Lord will punish the one who transgressed and will defend the one who was wronged" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

• forewarned you and testified - "told you beforehand and strongly warned against"

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 04 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 04 Translation Questions

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8

1 Thessalonians 4:7-8

UDB:

⁷ When God chose us believers, he did not want us to be people who behave in a sexually immoral way. On the contrary, he wants us to be people who do not sin. ⁸ So I warn you that those who disregard this teaching of mine are not just disregarding me, a human being. On the contrary, they are disregarding God, because God commanded it. Remember that God sent his Spirit, who does not sin, to live in you!

ULB:

⁷ For God did not call us to uncleanness, but to holiness. ⁸ Therefore, he who rejects this rejects not people, but God, who gives his Holy Spirit to you.

translationWords:

- God
- call, calling, called, call out
- unclean
- holy, holiness
- reject
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

translationNotes:

- God did not call us to uncleanness, but to holiness This can be stated in positive form. AT: "God called us to cleanness and holiness" (See: Double Negatives)
- God did not call us The word "us" refers to all believers. (See: Inclusive "We")
- he who rejects this "whoever disregards this teaching" or "whoever ignores this teaching"
- rejects not people, but God Paul stresses that this teaching is not from man, but from God.

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 04 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 04 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 4:9-12 translationNotes

1 Thessalonians 4:9-12

UDB:

⁹ I want to urge you again that you should love your fellow believers. You do not really need that anyone write to you about that, because God has already taught you how to love each other, ¹⁰ and because you already are showing that you love your fellow believers who live in other places in your province of Macedonia. Nevertheless, my fellow believers, we urge you to love each other more and more. ¹¹ We urge you also to try hard to attend to your own affairs and to not meddle with the affairs of others. We urge you also to work at your own occupations to earn what you need to live. Remember that we taught you previously to live like that. ¹² If you do these things, unbelievers will acknowledge that you behave decently, and you will not have to depend on others to supply what you need.

ULB:

⁹ Regarding brotherly love, you have no need for anyone to write to you, for you yourselves are taught by God to love one another. ¹⁰ Indeed, you do this for all the brothers who are in all Macedonia. But we exhort you, brothers, to do this even more. ¹¹ We also exhort you to aspire to live quietly, mind your own business, and work with your hands, just as we commanded you. ¹² Do this so that you may walk properly in respect to those who are outside the faith, and so that you may have need of nothing.

translationWords:

- love
- God
- brother
- Macedonia
- exhort, exhortation
- walk
- faith

- brotherly love "love for fellow believers"
- you do this for all the brothers who are in all Macedonia "you show love to the believers throughout Macedonia"
- brothers Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.
- to aspire "to try to"
- **live quietly** Paul uses the word "quietly" as a metaphor to describe living at peace in one's community and not causing strife. AT: "live in a calm and orderly way" (See: Metaphor)

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 4:9-12

• **mind your own business** - This idiom means to pay attention to your own concerns, not other people's. AT: "attend to your own needs" (See: Idiom)

- work with your hands This is a metaphor for living a productive life. AT: "work at your own jobs to earn what you need to live" (See: Metaphor)
- walk properly This metaphor describes how believers should relate to those in their communities. AT: "behave in a respectful and worthy manner" (See: Metaphor)
- those who are outside the faith "those who are not believers in Christ." Paul speaks of "the faith" as if it were a place. Here "the faith" refers to those who trust in Christ. (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 04 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 04 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 4:13-15

UDB:

¹³ My fellow believers, we also want you to understand what will happen to our fellow believers who now are dead. You must not be like the unbelievers. They grieve deeply for people who die because they do not expect to live again after they die. ¹⁴ We believers know that Jesus died and that he rose to live again. So we also know well that God will cause those joined to Jesus to live again, and that he will bring them back with Jesus. ¹⁵ I write this because the Lord Jesus revealed to me what I am now telling you. Some of you may think that when the Lord Jesus comes back, we believers who are still living will meet Jesus sooner than those who have already died. That is certainly not true!

ULB:

¹³ We do not want you to misunderstand, brothers, about those who sleep, so that you do not grieve like the rest who do not have certainty about the future. ¹⁴ For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so God will bring with Jesus those who have fallen asleep in him. ¹⁵ For this we say to you by the word of the Lord, that we who are alive, who are left at the coming of the Lord, will surely not precede those who have fallen asleep.

translationWords:

- brother
- sleep, asleep, fall asleep
- believe, believe in, belief
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- God
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

- **General Information:** Paul talks about believers who have died, who are still alive, and those who will be alive when Christ returns.
- We do not want you to misunderstand This can be stated in positive form. AT: "We want you to understand" (See: Double Negatives)
- brothers Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.
- those who sleep Here "sleep" is a euphemism for those who are dead. (See: Euphemism)
- you do not grieve "you do not mourn"
- like the rest who do not have certainty about the future "like the people who do not believe"
- if we believe Here "we" refers to Paul and his audience. (See: Inclusive "We")

- rose again "rose to live again"
- those who have fallen asleep in him Here "fallen asleep" is a polite way to refer to having died. (See: Euphemism)
- at the coming of the Lord "at the day of Christ's return"
- will surely not precede "will surely not go before"

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 04 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 04 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 4:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ I write this, because it is the Lord Jesus himself who will descend from heaven. When he comes down, he will command all of us believers to rise. The chief angel will shout with a loud voice, and another angel will blow a trumpet for God. Then the first thing that will happen is that the people who are joined to Christ will live again. ¹⁷ After that, God will take up into the clouds all of us believers who are still living on this earth. He will take us and those other believers who have died, in order that we all might together meet the Lord Jesus in the sky. As a result of that, we all will be with him forever. ¹⁸ Because all this is true, encourage each other by sharing this teaching with each other.

ULB:

¹⁶ For the Lord himself will descend from heaven. He will come with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trumpet of God, and the dead in Christ will rise first. ¹⁷ Then we who are alive, who are left, will together with them be caught up in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. In this way we will always be with the Lord. ¹⁸ Therefore, comfort one another with these words.

translationWords:

- Lord
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- angel, archangel
- God
- death, die, dead
- Christ, Messiah

- the Lord himself will descend "the Lord himself will come down"
- the archangel "the chief angel"
- the dead in Christ will rise first The "dead in Christ" are those believers who have passed away. AT: "those who believe in Jesus Christ, but who have already died, will rise first" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- we who are alive Here "we" refers to all believers who have not died. (See Inclusive "We")
- with them The word "them" refers to the dead believers who were made alive again.
- caught up in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air "meet the Lord Jesus in the sky"

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 04 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 04 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The end of this chapter forms a conclusion typical of a letter in the ancient Near East.

Special concepts in this chapter

Day of the Lord

The exact time of the coming day of the Lord will come as a surprise to the world. This is what the simile "like a thief in the night" means. Because of this, Christians are to be prepared for the coming of the Lord. (See: day of the Lord, day of Yahweh and Simile)

Quench the Spirit

This means to ignore the Holy Spirit's guidance and to ignore the work he is trying to do through a person.

Links:

• 1 Thessalonians 05:01 Notes

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3

1 Thessalonians 5:1-3

UDB:

¹ My fellow believers, I want to tell you more about the time when the Lord Jesus will come back. Really, you do not need that I write to you about that, ² because you yourselves know accurately about it already! You know that the Lord Jesus will return unexpectedly. People will not expect him, just as no one expects a thief when he comes at night. ³ At some time in the future many people will say, "All is peaceful and we are safe!" Then suddenly God will come to punish them severely! Just as a pregnant woman who experiences birth pains cannot stop those pains, those people will have no way to escape from God.

ULB:

5 ¹ Now concerning the times and seasons, brothers, you have no need that anything be written to you. ² For you yourselves know perfectly well that the day of the Lord is coming like a thief in the night. ³ When they say, "Peace and safety," then sudden destruction will come on them. It will be like birth pains in a pregnant woman. They will in no way escape.

translationWords:

- brother
- day of the Lord, day of Yahweh
- peace, peaceful

- Connecting Statement: Paul continues talking about the day Jesus will come back.
- **General Information:** In this chapter the words "we" and "us" refer to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy, unless otherwise noted. Also, the word "you" is plural and refers to the believers at the church of Thessalonica. (See: Exclusive "We" and Forms of You)
- the times and seasons This refers to the events preceding the Lord Jesus' return.
- brothers Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.
- **perfectly well** "very well" or "accurately" (UDB)
- **like a thief in the night** Just as one does not know which night a thief may come, we do not know when the day of the Lord will come. AT: "unexpectedly" (See: Simile)
- When they say "When the people say"
- then sudden destruction "then unexpected destruction"
- **like birth pains in a pregnant woman** Just as a pregnant woman's birth pains come suddenly and do not stop until the birth is complete, the destruction will come, and people will not escape. (See: Simile)

1 Thessalonians 5:1-3 translationNotes

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 05 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 05 Translation Questions

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 5:4-7

1 Thessalonians 5:4-7

UDB:

⁴ But you, my fellow believers, you are not like people who live in darkness, because you know the truth about God. So when Jesus returns, you will be ready for him. ⁵ You belong to the light, to the daytime. You are not like those who belong to the darkness, to the nighttime. ⁶ So we believers must be aware of what is happening. We must control ourselves and be ready for Jesus to come. ⁷ It is at night when people sleep and do not know what is happening, and it is at night when people become drunk.

ULB:

⁴ But you, brothers, are not in darkness so that the day would overtake you like a thief. ⁵ For you are all sons of the light and sons of the day. We are not sons of the night or the darkness. ⁶ So then, let us not sleep as the rest do. Instead, let us keep watch and be sober. ⁷ For those who sleep do so at night, and those who get drunk do so at night.

translationWords:

- brother
- darkness
- son, son of
- light
- sleep, asleep, fall asleep
- watch, watchman

- you, brothers Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.
- **are not in darkness** Paul speaks of evil and ignorance about God as if they were darkness. AT: "you are not unknowing, like people who live in the dark" (See: Metaphor)
- so that the day would overtake you like a thief The day when the Lord comes should not be a surprise to believers. (See: Simile)
- For you are all sons of the light and sons of the day Paul speaks of the truth as if it were light and day. AT: "For you know the truth, like people who live in the light, like people during the day" (See: Metaphor)
- We are not sons of the night or the darkness Paul speaks of evil and ignorance about God as if they were darkness. AT: We are not unknowing, like people who live in the darkness, like people at night" (See: Metaphor)
- **let us not sleep as the rest do** Paul speaks of spiritual unawareness as if it were sleep. AT: "let us not be like others who are not aware of Jesus coming back" (See: Metaphor)

1 Thessalonians 5:4-7 translationNotes

- let us The word "us" refers to all believers. (See Inclusive "We")
- **keep watch and be sober** Paul describes spiritual awareness as the opposite of sleep and drunkenness. (See: Metaphor)
- For those who sleep do so at night Just as when people sleep and do not know what is happening, so the people of this world do not know that Christ will return. (See: Metaphor)
- those who get drunk do so at night Paul is stating that it is at night when people become drunk, so when people are unaware of Christ's return they do not live a self-controlled life. (See: Metaphor)

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 05 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 05 Translation Questions

translationNotes 1 Thessalonians 5:8-11

1 Thessalonians 5:8-11

UDB:

⁸ But we believers belong to the day, so let us control ourselves. Let us be like soldiers: as they protect their chests with breastplates, let us protect ourselves by trusting in Christ and loving him. As they protect their heads with helmets, let us protect ourselves by expecting Christ to rescue us completely from evil.

⁹ When God chose us, he did not plan for us to be people whom he will punish. On the contrary, he decided to save us because we trust in what our Lord Jesus Christ has done for us. ¹⁰ Jesus died to atone for our sins in order that we might live together with him, whether we are alive or whether we are dead when he returns to earth. ¹¹ Because you know that this is true, continue to encourage each other, as indeed you now are doing.

ULB:

⁸ But since we belong to the day, we must stay sober and put on faith and love as a breastplate, and the certainty of future salvation for our helmet. ⁹ For God did not destine us for wrath, but to obtain salvation through our Lord Jesus Christ. ¹⁰ It is he who died for us so that, whether we are awake or asleep, we may live together with him. ¹¹ Therefore comfort one another and build each other up, just as you are already doing.

translationWords:

- son, son of
- breastplate, breastpiece
- faith
- love
- salvation
- God
- destiny, destine, destined
- wrath, fury
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- comfort, comforter

- **General Information:** In verses 8-10 the word "we" refers to all believers. (See <u>Inclusive</u> "We")
- we belong to the day Paul speaks of knowing the truth about God as belonging to the day. AT: "we know the truth" or "we have received the light of truth" (See: Metaphor)

1 Thessalonians 5:8-11 translationNotes

• we must stay sober - Paul compares being sober to exercising self-control. AT: "let us exercise self-control" (See: Metaphor)

- **put on faith and love as a breastplate** As a soldier would put on a breastplate to protect his body, a believer who lives by faith and love will find protection. AT: "protect ourselves with faith and love" or "protect ourselves by trusting Christ and loving him" (See: Metaphor)
- the certainty of future salvation for our helmet As a helmet protects a soldier's head, assurance of salvation protects the believer. AT: "protect ourselves by being certain that Christ will save us" (See: Metaphor)
- whether we are awake or asleep These are polite ways of saying alive or dead. AT: "whether we are alive or dead" (See: Euphemism)
- **build each other up** Here "build" is a metaphor that means encourage. AT: "encourage each other" (See: Metaphor)

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 05 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 05 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 5:12-14

UDB:

¹² My fellow believers, we ask that you recognize as leaders those people who work hard for you. This means that you must respect these leaders as fellow believers—you see how hard they work to help you grow in faith. These leaders guide you and they teach you how to live for the Lord. ¹³ We ask that you honor them because you love them and because of the work they do. We also urge you to live peacefully with each other.

¹⁴ My fellow believers, we urge that you warn believers who want to live off what others give them instead of working. Also encourage believers who are fearful, and help all people who are weak in any way. We also urge you to be patient with everyone.

ULB:

¹² We ask you, brothers, to acknowledge those who labor among you and who are over you in the Lord and who admonish you. ¹³ We also ask you to regard them highly in love because of their work. Be at peace among yourselves. ¹⁴ We exhort you, brothers: warn the disorderly, encourage the discouraged, help the weak, be patient toward all.

translationWords:

- brother
- labor, laborer
- Lord
- love
- works, deeds, work, acts
- peace, peaceful
- exhort, exhortation

- **General Information:** Paul begins to give his final instructions to the church in Thessalonica.
- brothers Here "brothers" means fellow believers.
- to acknowledge those who labor "to esteem and appreciate those who are involved in leading"
- who are over you in the Lord This refers to people God appointed to serve as leaders of the local group of believers.
- regard them highly in love because of their work Paul exhorts the believers to love and esteem their church leaders.

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 05 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 05 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 5:15-18

UDB:

¹⁵ Make sure that none of you does evil deeds to anyone who has done evil to you. On the contrary, you must always try to do good deeds to each other and to everyone else.

¹⁶ Be joyful at all times, ¹⁷ pray continually, ¹⁸ and thank God in all circumstances. God wants you to behave like that because of what Christ Jesus has done for you.

ULB:

¹⁵ See that no one pay back evil for evil to anyone. Instead, pursue what is good for one another and for all. ¹⁶ Rejoice always. ¹⁷ Pray without ceasing. ¹⁸ In everything give thanks. For this is the will of God in Christ Jesus for you.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- good, goodness
- rejoice
- pray, prayer
- will of God
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

translationNotes:

- Rejoice always. Pray without ceasing. In everything give thanks Paul is exhorting the believers to maintain a spiritual attitude of rejoicing in all things, being vigilant in prayer, and expressing thankfulness in all things.
- In everything In all circumstances
- For this is the will of God Paul is referring to the behavior he just mentioned as being God's will for the believers.

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 05 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 05 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 5:19-22

UDB:

¹⁹ Do not keep God's Spirit from working among you. ²⁰ For example, do not despise anything that the Holy Spirit tells someone. ²¹ On the contrary, evaluate all such messages. Accept the parts that are good and obey them. ²² Do not obey any kind of evil message.

ULB:

¹⁹ Do not quench the Spirit. ²⁰ Do not despise prophecies. ²¹ Test all things. Hold on to what is good. ²² Avoid every appearance of evil.

translationWords:

- quench
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- test
- good, goodness
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **Do not quench the Spirit** "Do not stop the Holy Spirit from working among you"
- **Do not despise prophecies** "Do not have contempt for prophecies" or "Do not hate anything the Holy Spirit tells someone"
- **Test all things** "Make sure that all messages that seem to come from God truly come from him"
- **Hold on to what is good** Paul speaks of messages from the Holy Spirit as if they were objects that one could grasp in his hands. (See: Metaphor)

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 05 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 05 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 5:23-24

UDB:

²³ May God give you peace and make you without fault so that you do not sin. May he keep you from sinning in any way until our Lord Jesus Christ comes back to earth. ²⁴ Because God has called you to be his people, you can certainly trust him to keep on helping you in that way.

ULB:

²³ May the God of peace make you completely holy. May your whole spirit, soul, and body be preserved without blame for the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. ²⁴ Faithful is he who calls you, the one who will also do it.

translationWords:

- God
- peace, peaceful
- holy, holiness
- spirit, spiritual
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- faithful, faithfulness
- call, calling, called, call out

translationNotes:

- make you completely holy This refers to God making a person sinless and perfect in his sight.
- your whole spirit, soul, and body This is a parallelism where the terms "spirit," "soul," and "body" have similar meanings and are used for emphasis. (See: Parallelism)
- be preserved without blame for "be kept from sinning until"
- Faithful is he who calls you "He is faithful who calls you"
- the one who will also do it "he will be helping you"

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 05 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 05 Translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 5:25-28

UDB:

²⁵ My fellow believers, pray for me, for Silas, and for Timothy. ²⁶ When you gather together as believers, greet each other affectionately, as fellow believers should. ²⁷ Make certain that you read this letter to all the believers who are among you. When I tell you this, it is the same as if the Lord were speaking to you! ²⁸ May our Lord Jesus Christ continue to act kindly toward you all.

ULB:

- ²⁵ Brothers, pray also for us.
- ²⁶ Greet all the brothers with a holy kiss. ²⁷ I request of you by the Lord that this letter be read to all the brothers.
- ²⁸ May the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you.

translationWords:

- brother
- pray, prayer
- holy, holiness
- kiss
- Lord
- letter, epistle
- grace, gracious
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** Paul gives his closing statements.
- brothers Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.
- I request of you by the Lord "I ask you, as if the Lord were speaking to you"
- that this letter be read This can be stated in active form. AT: "that all of you read this letter" (See: Active or Passive)

- Introduction to 1 Thessalonians
- 1 Thessalonians 05 General Notes
- 1 Thessalonians 05 Translation Questions

translation Questions

1 Thessalonians 1

Q? What does Paul always remember before God concerning the Thessalonians?		
A. Paul remembers their work of faith, their labor of love, and their patience of hope. [1:3]		
Q? In what four ways did the gospel come to the Thessalonians?		
A. The gospel came to the Thessalonians in word, in power, in the Holy Spirit, and in much assurance. [1:5]		
••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••		
A. The Thessalonians received the word in much tribulation. [1:6]		
Q? What was the Thessalonians' attitude as they received the word of the gospel?		
A. The Thessalonians received the word with joy in the Holy Spirit. [1:6]		
Q? What happened to the word of the Lord after the Thessalonians received it?		
A. The word of the Lord rang out in every place their faith went out. [1:8]		
••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••		
A. The Thessalonians were worshiping idols before they became believers in the true God. [1:9]		
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
A. Paul and the Thessalonians were waiting for Jesus to come from heaven. [1:10]		
Q? From what does Jesus deliver us?		
A. Jesus delivers us from the wrath to come. [1:10]		

1 Thessalonians 2

A. Paul and his companions had suffered and had been treated shamefully. [2:2]	
Q? Who is Paul desiring to please with his preaching of the gospel?	
A. Paul is desiring to please God with his preaching of the gospel. [2:4]	
Q? What did Paul not do in his preaching of the gospel?	
A. Paul did not use flattery, nor seek glory from people. [2:5-6]	
Q? How did Paul treat the Thessalonians when he was among them?	
A. Paul was gentle with the Thessalonians like a mother or father with their own children. [0 8,11]	12:7
••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	?
A. Paul and his companions worked night and day so that they were not a burden to the Thess nians. [2:9]	alo
Q? How did Paul tell the Thessalonians they should walk?	
A. Paul told the Thessalonians that they should walk in a manner worth of God who calls ther his own kingdom and glory. [2:12]	n to
Q? As what kind of word did the Thessalonians receive the message Paul preached to them?	
A. The Thessalonians received the message as the word of God, not as the word of man. [2:13]	

	_
Q? What had the unbelieving Jews done which did not please God?	
A. The unbelieving Jews persecuted the churches in Judea, killed Jesus a Paul, and forbid Paul to speak to the Gentiles. [2:14-16]	and the prophets, drove out
Q? Why was Paul not able to come to the Thessalonians even though the	nat was his wish?
A. Paul was not able to come because Satan hindered him. [2:17-18]	
Q? What will the Thessalonians be for Paul at the Lord's coming?	
A. The Thessalonians will be Paul's hope, joy, and crown of glorying at t	the Lord's coming. [2:19-20]

all people. [3:12]

1 Thessalonians 3

Q? What did Paul do, even though he would be left behind in Athens?
A. Paul sent Timothy to strengthen and comfort the believers in Thessalonica. [3:1-2]
Q? To what did Paul say he was appointed?
A. Paul said that he was appointed to afflictions. [3:3]
Q? About what was Paul concerned regarding the Thessalonians?
A. Paul was concerned that somehow the tempter had tempted them and that his labor had been in vain. [18:5]
Q? What comforted Paul when Timothy returned from Thessalonica? A. Paul was comforted to hear the good news of the Thessalonians' faith and love, and that they
longed to see him. [3:6-7]
Q? Paul says that he lives if the Thessalonians do what?
A. Paul says that he lives if the Thessalonians stand firm in the Lord. [3:8]
Q? For what does Paul pray night and day?
A. Paul prays night and day that he might see the Thessalonians and provide what is lacking in their faith. [3:10]
O? In what does Paul wish the Thessalonians to increase and abound?

A. Paul wishes the Thessalonians to increase and abound in love toward one another and toward

Q? For what event does Paul want the Thessalonians to be prepared by having their hearts blameless in holiness?

A. Paul wants the Thessalonians to be prepared for the coming of the Lord Jesus with all his holy ones. [3:13]

12]

1 Thessalonians 4

Q? What did Paul want the Thessalonians to do with the instructions he had given them about how they must walk and please God?							
A. Paul wanted the Thessalonians to continue to walk and please God, and to do even more. [4:1-2]							
Q? What did Paul say was God's will for the Thessalonians?							
A. Paul said God's will for the Thessalonians was their sanctification. [4:3]							
Q? How were the husbands to treat their wives?							
A. The husbands were to treat their wives in holiness and honor. [4:4]							
Q? What would happen to a brother who sinned in the matter of sexual immorality?							
A. The Lord would be an avenger toward a brother who sinned in the matter of sexual immorality. [4:6]							
Q? Who does a person reject who rejects the call to holiness?							
A. A person who rejects the call to holiness rejects God. [4:8]							
Q? What were the Thessalonians doing that Paul wanted them to do even more?							
A. Paul wanted the Thessalonians to love one another even more. [4:9-10]							
Q? What were the Thessalonians to do so that they walked properly before unbelievers and had need of nothing?							
A. The Thessalonians were to be quiet, mind their own business, and work with their hands. [4:11-							

Q? About what subject did the Thessalonians possibly have a misunderstanding?
A. The Thessalonians possibly had a misunderstanding about what happened to those who slept [4:13]
Q? What will God do for those who have fallen asleep in Jesus?
A. God will bring with Jesus those who have fallen asleep in Christ. [4:14]
Q? How will the Lord descend from heaven?
A. The Lord will descend from heaven with a shout and with the trumpet of God. [4:16]
Q? Who will rise first, and then who will rise together with them?
A. The dead in Christ will rise first, then those who are still alive will be caught up with them [4:16-17]
Q? Who will the risen meet, and for how long?
A. The risen will meet the Lord in the air, and will always then be with the Lord. [4:17]
Q? What did Paul tell the Thessalonians to do with his teaching about those who had fallen asleep?
A. Paul told the Thessalonians to comfort one another with his words. [4:18]

1 Thessalonians 5

Q? How does Paul say the day of the Lord will come?	
A. Paul says the day of the Lord will come like a thief in the night. [5:2]	
Q? What will some people be saying when sudden destruction comes upon them? A. Some people will be saying, "Peace and safety". [5:3]	
Q? Why does Paul say the day of the Lord should not overtake the believers like a thief? A. Because the believers are not in darkness, but are sons of the light, the day of the Lord should not overtake them like a thief. [5:4-5]	ıld
Q? What does Paul tell the believers to do regarding the coming day of the Lord? A. Paul tells the believers to watch and be sober. [5:6]	
Q? For what are the believers destined by God? A. The believers are destined by God for salvation through the Lord Jesus Christ. [5:9]	
Q? What attitude does Paul say the believers should have toward those who are over them in tord? A. Paul says that they should acknowledge and highly regard them in love. [5:12-13]	:he
Q? What does Paul say no one should do when evil is done to them? A. Paul says that no one should pay back evil when evil is done to them. [5:15]	

Q? What does Paul say that the believers should do in everything, and why?
A. Paul says that the believers should give thanks in everything, because this is the will of God for them. [5:18]
Q? What instructions does Paul give the believers about prophecies?
A. Paul instructs the believers to not despise prophecies, and to test all things, holding on to that which is good. [5:20-21]
Q? What does Paul pray that God will do for the believers?
A. Paul prays that God will sanctify the believers completely in spirit, soul, and body. [5:23]
Q? What does Paul pray would be with the believers?
A. Paul prays that the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ would be with the believers. [5:28]

afflict, affliction translationWords

translationWords

afflict, affliction

Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- In certain contexts "afflict" could be translated as "happen to" or "come to" or "bring suffering."
- A phrase like, "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as, "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress." physical
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as, "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See: leprosy, leper, leprous, plague, suffer, suffering)

Bible References:

translationWords amen, truly

amen, truly

Definition:

The term "amen" is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as "truly."

- When used at the end of a prayer, "amen" communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used "amen" to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by "and I say to you" to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses "amen" this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as "verily" or "truly."
- Another word meaning "truly" is sometimes translated as "surely" or "certainly" and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, "amen" could be translated as, "let it be so" or "may this happen" or "that is true."
- When Jesus says, "truly I tell you," this could also be translated as, "Yes, I tell you sincerely" or "That is true, and I also tell you."
- The phrase, "truly, truly I tell you" could be translated as "I tell you this very sincerely" or "I tell you this very earnestly" or "what I am telling you is true."

•

(See: fulfill, true, truth, come true)

Bible References:

angel, archangel translationWords

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God is by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh" has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include, "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include, "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh who looked like an angel."

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, rulers, rule, servant, slave, slavery)

Bible References:

translationWords angel, archangel

Examples from the Bible stories:

• **[02-12]** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.

- [22-03] The angel responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- [23-06] Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God...
- [25-08] Then angels came and took care of Jesus.
- [38-12] Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- [38-15]"I could ask the Father for an army of angels to defend me."

apostle, apostleship translationWords

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The "apostles" were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term "apostleship" refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word "apostle" means, "someone who is sent out for a special purpose." The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, including forcing demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "apostle" can also be translated with a word or phrase that means, "someone who is sent out" or "sent out one" or "person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people."
- It is important to translate the terms "apostle" and "disciple" in different ways from each other.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: authority, disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, Saul, the twelve, the eleven)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [26-10] Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- [30-01] Jesus sent his apostles to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- [38-02] Judas was one of Jesus' **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles**' money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- [43-13] The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles**' teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- [46-08] Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

believe, believe in, belief

Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
- To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right."
- To "believe in" could be translated as, "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."

(See also: faith, believer)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-04] Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04-08] Abram believed God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he believed God's promise.
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who believed in him.
- [11-06] But the Egyptians did not believe God or obey his commands.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"

blameless translationWords

blameless

Definition:

The term "blameless" literally means "without blame." It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being "blameless" behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is "one who fears God and turns away from evil."

Translation Suggestions:

• This could also be translated as, "with no fault to his character" or "completely obedient to God" or "avoiding sin" or "keeping away from evil."

Bible References:

bold, boldly, boldness

Definition:

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A "bold" person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as "courageous" or "fearless."
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to "boldly" preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as "confidently" or "with strong courage" or "courageously."
- The "boldness" of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ's redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. "Boldness" could also be translated as "confident courage."

(See also: confidence, confident, good news, gospel, redeem, redemption, redeemer)

Bible References:

breastplate, breastpiece

Definition:

The term "breastplate" refers to a piece of armor covering the front of the chest to protect a soldier during battle. The term "breastpiece" refers to a special piece of clothing that the Israelite high priest wore over the front part of his chest.

- A "breastplate" used by a soldier could be made of wood, metal, or animal skin. It was made to prevent arrows, spears, or swords from piercing the chest of the soldier.
- The "breastpiece" worn by the Israelite high priest was made of cloth and had valuable gems attached to it. The priest wore this when he was performing his duties of service to God in the temple.
- Other ways to translate the term "breastplate" could include, "metal protective chest covering" or "armor piece protecting the chest."
- The term "breastpiece" could be translated with a word that means, "priestly clothing covering the chest" or "priestly garment piece" or "front piece of priest's clothing."

(See also: armor, high priest, Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel, pierce, priest, priesthood, temple, warrior, soldier)

Bible References:

translationWords brother

brother

Definition:

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
- If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, the twelve, the eleven, God the Father, Heavenly Father, sister, spirit, spiritual)

Bible References:

call, calling, called, call out

Definition:

The terms "call" and "call out" literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
- The term "called" is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, "He is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
- To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God knows a person's name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
- When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
- "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
- "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
- To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
- To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
- To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
- The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
- When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know your name and have chosen you."

(See: pray, prayer)

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink }

Christ, Messiah translationWords

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

• Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.

- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proved he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus."
- "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ."

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah." (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, the Son, Son, David, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, anoint, anointed)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-07] The Messiah was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- [17-08] As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.

translationWords Christ, Messiah

- [21-01] From the very beginning, God planned to send the Messiah.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- [21-05] The Messiah would start the New Covenant.
- [21-06] God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- [21-09] The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-07]"But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave."
- [43-09]"But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!"
- [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- [46-06] Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the Messiah.

church, Church translationWords

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term "church" refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God's word preached. The term "the Church" often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a "called out" assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter ("Church") to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone's home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the "church at Ephesus."
- In the Bible, "church" does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "church" could be translated as a "gathering together" or "assembly" or "congregation" or "ones who meet together."
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of "church" does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate "assembly" in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, assemble, believer, Christian)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[43-12]** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- [46-09] Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- [46-10] So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.

translationWords church, Church

- [47-13] The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **[50-01]** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

comfort, comforter translationWords

comfort, comforter

Definition:

The terms "comfort" and "comforter" refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a "comforter."
- In the Old Testament, the term "comfort" is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those
 who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression "comforter of Israel" referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the "Comforter" who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "comfort" could also be translated as, "ease the pain of" or "help (someone) overcome grief" or "encourage" or "console."
- A phrase such as "our comfort" could be translated as "our encouragement" or "our consoling of (someone)" or "our help in times of grieving."
- The term "comforter" could be translated as "person who comforts" or "someone who helps ease pain" or "person who encourages."
- When the Holy Spirit is called "the Comforter" this could also be translated as "the Encourager" or "the Helper" or "the One who helps and guides."
- The phrase "comforter of Israel" could be translated as, "the Messiah, who comforts Israel."
- An expression like, "they have no comforter" could also be translated as, "No one has comforted them" or "There is no one to encourage or help them."

(See also: encourage, encouragement, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord)

Bible References:

confidence, confident

Definition:

The term "confidence" refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term "hope" often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as "confidence" or "confidence for the future" or "future confidence" especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term "confidence" refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, "have confidence in God" means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being "confident" means believing in God's promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "confident" could be translated as "assured" or "very sure."
- The phrase "be confident" could also be translated as "trust completely" or "be completely sure about" or "know for certain."
- The term "confidently" could also be translated as "boldly" or "with certainty."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confidence" could include, "complete assurance" or "sure expectation" or "certainty."

(See also: believe, believe in, belief, believer, bold, boldly, boldness, faithful, faithfulness, hope, trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:19-22
- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- Job 04:4-6
- Philippians 01:25-27
- Proverbs 14:26-27
- Romans 05:1-2

crown, to crown translationWords

crown, to crown

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term "to crown" means to put a crown on someone's head; figuratively it means, "to honor."

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king's power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus' head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, "to crown" means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his "joy and crown." In this expression, "crown" is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, "crown" could be translated as "prize" or "honor" or "reward."
- The figurative use of "to crown" could be translated as "to honor" or "to decorate."
- If a person is "crowned" this could be translated as "a crown was put on his head."
- The expression, "he was crowned with glory and honor" could be translated as, "glory and honor were bestowed on him" or "he was given glory and honor" or "he was endowed with glory and honor."

(See also: glory, glorious, king, olive)

Bible References:

translationWords darkness

darkness

Definition:

The term "darkness" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: Metaphor)
- People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: corrupt, corruption, dominion, kingdom, light, redeem, redemption, righteous, righteousness)

Bible References:

day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

Description:

The Old Testament term "day of Yahweh" is used to refer to a specific time(s) when God would punish people for their sin.

- The New Testament term "day of the Lord" usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection, is also sometimes referred to as the "last day." This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word "day" in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a "time" or "occasion" that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a "pouring out of God's wrath" upon those who do not believe.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "day of Yahweh" could include, "time of Yahweh" or "time when Yahweh will punish his enemies" or "time of Yahweh's wrath."
- Other ways to translate "day of the Lord" could include "time of the Lord's judgment" or "time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people."

(See also: biblical time: day, judgment day, Lord, resurrection, Yahweh)

Bible References:

translationWords death, die, dead

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, "to die" may be expressed as "to not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as "to pass away" in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "spiritual death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, "put to death" could also be translated as, "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

death, die, dead translationWords

(See also: believe, believe in, belief, faith, life, live, living, alive, spirit, spiritual)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

• **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.

- [02-11]"Then you will die, and your body will return to dirt."
- [07-10] Then Isaac died, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- [37-05]"Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who believes in me will never die."
- [40-08] Through his death, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- [43-07]"Although Jesus died, God raised him from the dead."
- [48-02] Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone dies.
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

lacktriangle

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called "deceit."

- Another term, "deception" also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as, "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as, "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated by "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: true, truth, come true)

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}

destiny, destine, destined

Definition:

The term "destiny" refers to what will happen to people in the future. If someone is "destined" to do something, it means that what that person will do in the future has been decided by God.

- When God "destines" a nation for wrath, this means that he has decided or chosen to punish that nation because of their sin.
- Judas was "destined" for destruction, which means that God had decided that Judas would be destroyed because of his rebellion.
- Every person has a final, eternal destiny, either in heaven or in hell.
- When the writer of Ecclesiastes says that everyone's destiny is the same, he means that all people eventually die.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "destine you for wrath" could also be translated as, "decided that you will be punished" or "determined that you will experience my wrath."
- The figurative expression, "they are destined for the sword" could be translated as, "God has decided that they will be destroyed by enemies who will kill them with swords" or "God has determined that their enemies will kill them with swords."
- The phrase, "you are destined for," could be translated using a phrase like, "God has decided that you will be."
- Depending on the context, "destiny" could be translated as "final end" or "what will happen in the end" or "what God has decided will happen."

(See also: captive, captivity, everlasting, eternal, eternity, heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly, hell, lake of fire, John (the Baptist), repent, repentance,)

Bible References:

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral"
- Other ways to translate these could include, "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, disobedient, sin, sinful, sinner, good, goodness, righteous, demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-04]"God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does."
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very wicked and violent.
- [03-02] But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among wicked people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- [08-12]"You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!"
- [14-02] They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- [17-01] But then he (Saul) became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- [18-11] In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were evil.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak evil things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

translationWords exhort, exhortation

exhort, exhortation

Definition:

The term "exhort" means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called "exhortation."

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God's will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "exhort" could also be translated as "strongly urge" or "persuade" or "advise."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term "exhort" should be translated differently than "encourage," which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Ussually this term will also be translated differently from "admonish," which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

Bible References:

face translationWords

face

Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means, "I" or "me."
- In a physical sense, "to face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
- Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term "to face" could be translated as "to turn toward" or "to look at directly" or "to look at the face of."
- The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
- Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as, "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
- The expression, "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
- The expression, "hide his face from" could be translated as, "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
- To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as, "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
- The expression, "say it to their face" could be translated as, "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
- The expression, "on the face of the land" could also be translated as, "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

translationWords face

		_			_					
D:	: 6	_	n	-4	_		-	_	29	•
ы	Ю	16	ĸ	eı	е	re	n	С	-5	Ξ

faith translationWords

faith

Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

• To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.

- To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression, "the truths of the faith."
- In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe." (See: Abstract Nouns])
- The expression, "keep the faith" could be translated by, "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
- The sentence, "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by, "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
- The expression, "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like, "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: believe, believe in, belief, faithful, faithfulness)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [05-06] When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's **faith** by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- [31-07] Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little faith, why did you doubt?"
- [32-16] Jesus said to her, "Your faith has healed you. Go in peace."

translationWords faith



faithful, faithfulness

Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable."
- In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means, "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God."
- Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include, "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."

(See also: faith, believe, believe in, belief)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- [14-12] Even so, God was still faithful to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- [15-13] The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow his laws.
- [17-09] David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- [18-04] God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- [35-12]"The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked faithfully for you!"
- [49-17] But God is faithful and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- [50-04] If you remain faithful to me to the end, then God will save you."

translationWords sexual immorality

sexual immorality

Definition:

The term "sexual immorality" refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God's plan. Older English Bible versions call this "fornication."

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God's will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person's spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is "prostitution," which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel's unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sexual immorality" could be translated as "immorality" as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "wrong sexual acts" or "sex outside of marriage."
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term "adultery."
- The translation of this term's figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, adulterer, false god, god, prostitute, harlot, unfaithful)

Bible References:

Gentile translationWords

Gentile

Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to everyone else as a "Gentile."
- Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew.".
- Traditionally, Jews would not eat with Gentiles or associate with them, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel, Jacob, Israel, Jew, Jewish)

Bible References:

translationWords glory, glorious

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

- Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression "to glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include, "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression, "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as, "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."

(See also: glorify)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the glory of God."
- [37-08] Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's **glory** if you believe in me?"

God translationWords

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh" which means, "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods" which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include, "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
- Other ways to translate "God" could be, "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for "God" and "god."
- The phrase, "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as, "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, creation, Creator, false god, god, God the Father, Heavenly Father, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, idol, Son of God, the Son, Yahweh,)

Bible References:

translationWords God

- **[01-01]God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]God made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am God Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever."
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is God."
- [49-09] But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [50-16] But some day God will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

godly, godliness translationWords

godly, godliness

Definition:

The term "godly" is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. "Godliness" is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, "the godly" could be translated as, "godly people" or "people who obey God." (See: Nominal Adjectives)
- The adjective "godly" could be translated as "obedient to God" or "righteous" or "pleasing to God."
- The phrase, "in a godly manner" could be translated as, "in a way that obeys God" or "with actions and words that please God."
- Ways to translate "godliness" could include, "acting in a way that pleases God" or "obeying God" or "living in a righteous manner."

(See also honor, to honor, obey, obedient, obedience, righteous, righteousness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness, unrighteous, unrighteousness)

Bible References:

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms, "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. This term also occurs as "Father," especially when Jesus is referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized, to show that this refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: father, forefather, God, heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, Son of God, the Son, Son)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [24-09] There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "Father, thank you for hearing me."
- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my spirit into your hands."
- [42-10]"So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- [43-08]"Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of God the Father."

• [50-10]"Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

translationWords good, goodness

good, goodness

Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
- A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
- A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, "a good farmer."
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
- The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as, "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include, "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: evil, wicked, wickedness, holy, holiness, profit, profitable, righteous, righteousness,)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

• **[01-04]** God saw that what he had created was **good**.

good, goodness translationWords

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of good and evil."
- [01-12] Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone."
- [02-04]"God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does."
- [08-12]"You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!"
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]"Good teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God."

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term "gospel" literally means "good news" and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, "good news" is usually translated as "gospel" and is also used in phrases such as, the "gospel of Jesus Christ," the "gospel of God" and the "gospel of the kingdom."

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, "good message" or "good announcement" or "God's message of salvation" or "the good things God teaches about Jesus."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, "good news of" could include, "good news/message about" or "good message from" or "the good things God tells us about" or "what God says about how he saves people."

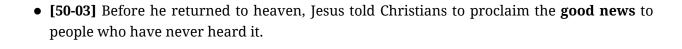
(See: kingdom, , sacrifice, offering, salvation)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [23-06] The angel said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!"
- [26-03] Jesus read, "God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord's favor."
- [45-10] Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [46-10] Then they sent them off to preach the good news about Jesus in many other places.
- [47-01] One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- [47-13] The good news about Jesus kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **[50-01]** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- [50-02] When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

good news, gospel translationWords



translationWords grace, gracious

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression "to find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that "grace" could be translated include, "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
- The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "merciful tilly kind."
- The expression, "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as, "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

Bible References:

heart translationWords

heart

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as, "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as, "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include, "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard, hardness, harden other)

Bible References:

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See: kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven)

Bible References:

Waiting

- **[04-02]** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from heaven, called "manna."
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "Father, thank you for hearing me."
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

holy, holiness translationWords

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include, "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."

(See also: Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, consecrates anctify, sanctification, set apart)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [01-16] He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- [09-12]"You are standing on holy ground."
- [13-02]"If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- [13-05]"Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day holy."
- [22-05]"So the baby will be holy, the Son of God."
- [50-02] As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
- Ways to translate this term could also include, "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: holy, holiness, spirit, spiritual, God, Lord, God the Father, heavenly Father, Father, Son of God, the Son, Son, gift)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [01-01] But God's Spirit was there over the water.
- [24-08] When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, the Spirit of God appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- [26-01] After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- [26-03] Jesus read, "God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- [42-10]"So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- [43-03] They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- [43-08]"And Jesus has sent the Holy Spirit just as he promised he would do. The Holy Spirit is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing."

- [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the Holy Spirit."
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of wisdom.

translationWords honor, to honor

honor, to honor

Definition:

The terms "honor" and "to honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

• Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.

- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "honor" could include, "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
- The term "to honor" could be translated as "to show special respect to" or "to cause to be praised" or "to show high regard for" or "to highly value."

(See also: dishonor, dishonorable, glory, glorious, glorify, praise other)

Bible References:

idol, idolatrous translationWords

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

(See also: false god, foreign god, god, goddess, image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [13-05] "Do not make idols or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God."
- [13-12] Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- [14-03] "You must completely destroy all of their idols. If you do not obey me, you will worship their idols instead of me."
- [18-12] All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped idols. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- [19-16] They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means, "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for the Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His earthly parents were told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many languages spell "Jesus" and "Christ" in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term, "Christ," some languages may prefer to use some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, Messiah, God, God the Father, Heavenly Father, high priest, kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven, Mary, Savior, Son of God, the Son)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [22-04] The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- [23-02]"Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- [24-07] So John baptized him (Jesus), even though Jesus had never sinned.
- [24-09] There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- [25-08]Jesus did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.

- [26-08] Then Jesus went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus healed them.
- [31-03] Then Jesus finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- [38-02] He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that Jesus was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- [40-08] Through his death, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- [42-11] Then Jesus was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. Jesus sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **[50-17]Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

translationWords Jew, Jewish, Jews

Jew, Jewish, Jews

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson, Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: Abraham, Abram, Jacob, Israel, Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel, Babylon, Babylonian, Jewish leaders, Jewish authorities, religious leaders)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [20-11] The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- [20-12] So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- [37-10] Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- [37-11] But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- [40-02] Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the Jews" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- [46-06] Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

joy, joyful translationWords

joy, joyful

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or with a phrase that means, "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." Metonymy)

(See also: rejoice)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [33-07]"The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with joy."
- [34-04]"The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with joy, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- [41-07] The women were full of fear and great joy. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

translationWords Judea

Judea

Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broader sense.

• Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."

- Other times "Judea" has a broader sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broader sense of Judea (ex. Luke 1:5) could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense (ex. Luke 1:39) could be translated as "Judea Province" or "Judah Province" since this is the part of the land of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Galilean, Edom, Edomite, Idumea, Judah, Judah, kingdom of Judah, Samaria, Samaritan)

Bible References:

kingdom translationWords

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as, "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be, "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase, "kingdom of light" could be translated as, "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, kingdom of Judah, priest, priesthood)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [13-02] God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- [18-04] God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.

translationWords kingdom

• [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.

- [18-08] The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the kingdom of Israel.
- [21-08] A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people.

kiss translationWords

kiss

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression "to kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

translationWords labor, laborer

labor, laborer

Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It often implies that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate "labor" could include, "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or "to work hard."

(See also: hard, hardness, harden, labor pains, in labor)

Bible References:

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
 - o the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
 - \circ all the laws given to Moses
 - o the first five books of the Old Testament.
 - o the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
 - o all of God's instructions and will.
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament").

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws" since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as, "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include: "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions"
- The phrase, "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as, "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, instruction, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, lawfully, unlawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

• [13-07] God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- [15-13] Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow his laws.
- [16-01] After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey God's laws.
- [21-05] In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- [27-01] Jesus answered, "What is written in God's law?"
- [28-01] Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?" There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God's laws."

letter, epistle translationWords

letter, epistle

Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter are letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include, "written message" or "written down words" or "writing."

(See also: encourage, encouragement, exhort, exhortation, teach, teaching, teacher, taught)

Bible References:

translationWords light

light

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: Metaphor)

- Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that "God is light," and there is no darkness in him.
- Light and darkness are completely opposite. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he is "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world, by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
- Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: darkness, holy, holiness, righteous, righteousness, true, truth, come true)

Bible References:

Lord translationWords

Lord

Facts:

The term "Lord" refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has, "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, lord, master, sir, ruler, rulers, rule, Yahweh)

Bible References:

translationWords love

love

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" which some languages may express using different words:

- 1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
 - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
 - When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
 - In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
- 2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.
 - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
 - It can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
- 3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
- 4. In the figurative expression, "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."

love translationWords

• Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

• Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: covenant, death, die, dead, sacrifice, offering, save, safe, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And love your neighbor as yourself."
- [33-08]"The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I love."
- [39-10]"Everyone who loves the truth listens to me."
- [47-01] She (Lydia) loved and worshiped God.
- **[48-01]** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to love other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God loves sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God loves you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

translationWords lust

lust

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually refers to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term is used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could also be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or "to strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase "to lust after" could also be translated as "to wrongly desire" or "to think immorally about" or "to immorally desire."

(See also: adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, idol, idolatrous)

Bible References:

Macedonia translationWords

Macedonia

Facts:

In New Testament times, Macedonia was a Roman province located just north of ancient Greece.

• Some important Macedonian cities mentioned in the Bible were Berea, Philippi and Thessalonica.

- Through a vision, God told Paul to preach the gospel to the people in Macedonia.
- Paul and his coworkers went to Macedonia and taught the people there about Jesus and helped the new believers to grow in their faith.
- In the Bible there are letters that Paul wrote to the believers in the Macedonian cities of Philippi and Thessalonica.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: believer, Berea, faith, good news, gospel, Greece, Philippi, Thessalonica, Thessalonians)

Bible References:

translationWords Paul, Saul

Paul, Saul

Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach nonJewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christian, Jewish Leaders, Rome)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [45-06] A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- [46-01] Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- [46-02] While Saul was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. Saul heard someone say, "Saul! Saul! Why do you persecute me?"
- [46-05] So Ananias went to Saul, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- [46-06] Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- [46-09] Barnabas and Saul went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.

Paul, Saul translationWords

• [47-01] As Saul traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "Paul."

• [47-14] Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

translationWords peace, peaceful

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
- To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
- The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

Waiting

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Philippi translationWords

Philippi

Facts:

Philippi was a major city and Roman colony located in Macedonia in the northern part of ancient Greece.

- Paul and Silas traveled to Philippi to preach about Jesus to the people there.
- While in Philippi, Paul and Silas were arrested, but God miraculously freed them.
- The New Testament book of Philippians is a letter that the apostle Paul wrote to the Christians in the church at Philippi.
- Note that this is a different city from Caesarea Philippi which was located in northeastern Israel near Mount Hermon.

(See also: Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi, Christian, , church, Church, Macedonia, Paul, Saul, Silas, Silvanus)

http://catholic-resources.org/Bible/NT-Statistics-Greek.htm

Bible References:

Waiting

- [47-01] One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of **Philippi** to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- [47-13] The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and Silas from prison and asked them to leave **Philippi**.

translationWords power, powers

power, powers

Definition:

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
- Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include, "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."
- An expression like "save us from the power of our enemies" could be translated as, "save us from being oppressed by our enemies" or "rescue us from being controlled by our enemies." In this case, "power" has the meaning of using one's strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, miracle, wonder, sign,)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [22-05] The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God."
- [26-01] After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- [32-15] Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- [42-11] Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- [43-06]"Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

pray, prayer translationWords

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: false god, foreign god, god, goddess, forgive, forgiveness, praise)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [06-05] Isaac prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal prayed to Baal, "Hear us, O Baal!"
- [21-07] Priests also prayed to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **[43-13]** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

translationWords preach

preach

Definition:

To speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him.

• Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.

- "Preaching" and "teaching" are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- "Preaching" mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. "Teaching" is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term "preach" is usually used with the word "gospel."
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his "teachings."

(See also: good news, gospel, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, John (the Baptist), kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [24-02] He (John) preached to them, saying, "Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!"
- [30-01] Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- [45-06] But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- [45-07] He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- [46-06] Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- [46-10] Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- [47-14] Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- [50-02] When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example, the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
- The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached." (See: Synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer, false god, foreign god, god, goddess, false prophet, fulfill, law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, vision)

Bible References:

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05]"This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.""
- [43-07]"This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave."
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

lacktriangle

quench translationWords

quench

Definition:

The term "quench" means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

• This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.

- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term "quench" in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not "quench the Holy Spirit." This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit to produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means to do something that prevents the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people.

(See also: fruit, fruitful, gift, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord)

Bible References:

raise, rise, risen, arise, arose

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

- The figurative phrase, "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "restore" or "rebuild."
- "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase, "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "exalt" someone or something.

rise, arise

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose" and "arose" are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
- If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
- Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen"!

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "raise" or "raise up" can be translated as "to lift up" or "to make higher."
- To "raise up" could also be translated as, "to cause to appear" or "to appoint" or "to bring into existence."
- To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
- The phrase "raise someone from the dead," could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
- Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as, "provide" or "appoint" or "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
- The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
- Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: resurrection, appoint, appointed, exalt, exaltation)

Bible References:

- [21-14] The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also raise him from the dead.
- [41-05]"Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- [43-07]"Although Jesus died, God raised him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."
- [44-05]" You killed the author of life, but God raised him from the dead. "
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again!"
- [48-04] This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- [49-02] He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- [49-12] You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

translationWords receive

receive

Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and to treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "receive" can be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression, "you will receive power" could be translated as, "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could also be translated as, "was able to see" or "became able to see again" or "God healed him so that he was able to see."

(See also: Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, lord, master, sir, save, safe)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [21-13] The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my spirit."
- [49-06] He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- [49-10] When Jesus died on the cross, he received your punishment.
- [49-13] God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master.

reject translationWords

reject

Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses' leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term "push away" is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by, "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
- In the expression, "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as, "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
- In the context of the people rejecting God's commandments, this could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: command, to command, commandment, disobey, disobedient, disobedience, obey, obedient, obedience, stiff-necked, stubborn)

Bible References:

translationWords rejoice

rejoice

Definition:

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

• This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.

- It could be translated as, "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said, "my soul rejoices in God my Savior" she meant, "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

(See also: joy, joyful)

Bible References:

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The terms "righteous" and "righteousness" refer to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus' righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as, "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase, "the righteous" could also be translated as, "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good
- Sometimes "the righteous" is used figuratively and refers to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."

(See also: good, goodness, holy, holiness, evil, wicked, wickedness, just, justice, justly, faithful, faithfulness)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [03-02] But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- [04-08] God declared that Abram was righteous because he believed in God's promise.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- [23-01] Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- [50-10] Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

translationWords salvation

salvation

Definition:

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

• In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.

• The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using the word "save" or "rescue" as in, "when God saves people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God will rescue his people (from their enemies)."
- "God is my salvation" could be translated as, "God is the one who saves me."
- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as, "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: save, safe, Savior)

Bible References:

sanctify, sanctification

Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term, "to sanctify" can be translated as "to set apart" or "to make holy" or "to purify."
- When people sanctify themselves, it means that they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God's service. Often the word "consecrate" is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- With the meaning of "consecrate" this term could be translated as "dedicate someone (or something) to God's service."
- Depending on the context, the phrase, "your sanctification" could be translated as "making you holy" or "setting you apart (for God)" or "what makes you holy."

(See also: consecrate, holy, holiness, set apart)

Bible References:

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

The devil is a spirit being that God created, but he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created, because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" can be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, evil, wicked, wickedness, kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven, tempt, temptation,)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [21-01] The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- [25-08] Jesus did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- [33-06] So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- [38-07] After Judas took the bread, Satan entered into him.

Satan, devil, evil one translationWords

• [48-04] God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush Satan's head, and Satan would wound his heel. This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.

- [49-15] God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **[50-09]**"The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- [50-10]"When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- [50-15] When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

translationWords save, safe

save, safe

Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," it means that through Jesus' death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include, "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."
- In the expression, "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."
- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."

(See also: cross, deliver, deliverer, deliverance, punish, punishment, salvation, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [09-08] Moses tried to save his fellow Israelite.
- [11-02] God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- [12-05] Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- [12-13] The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- [16-17] This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to save them.
- [44-08] "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- [47-11] The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be saved?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be saved."

save, safe translationWords

- [49-12] Good works cannot save you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

translationWords serve, service

serve, service

Definition:

The term "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

• In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for."

- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute to" or "hand out to" or "give to."1#comment 5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940
- The term "service" refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a "meeting" of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as, "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- "To serve God" can be translated as "to worship and obey God" or "to do the work that God has commanded."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they "serve" the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: covenant, law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, servant, slave, slavery)

Bible References:

Silas, Silvanus translationWords

Silas, Silvanus

Facts:

Silas was a leader among the believers in Jerusalem.

• The elders of the church in Jerusalem appointed Silas to go with Paul and Barnabas to bring a letter to the city of Antioch.

- Silas later traveled with Paul to other cities to teach people about Jesus.
- Paul and Silas were put in jail in the city of Philippi. They sang praises to God while they were there and God released them from the jail. The jailer became a Christian as a result of their testimony.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Antioch, Barnabas, Jerusalem, Paul, Saul, Philippi, prison, prisoner, imprison, testimony, testify)

Bible References:

Waiting

- [47-01] One day, Paul and his friend **Silas** went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- [47-02] She (Lydia) invited Paul and Silas to stay at her house, so they stayed with her and her family.
- [47-03] Paul and Silas often met with people at the place of prayer.
- [47-07] So the owners of the slave girl took Paul and Silas to the Roman authorities, who beat them and threw them into jail.
- [47-08] They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet.
- [47-11] The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be saved?"
- [47-13] The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and Silas from prison and asked them to leave Philippi. Paul and Silas visited Lydia and some other friends and then left the city.

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- "To sin" could also be translated as "to disobey God" or "to do wrong."
- Depending on the context, "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
- Depending on the context, the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means, "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include, "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: disobey, disobedient, disobedience, evil, wicked, wickedness, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- * [03-15] God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- * [13-12] God was very angry with them because of their sin and planned to destroy them.
- * [20-01] The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- * **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- * [35-01] One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- * [38-05] Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- * [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- * [48-08] We all deserve to die for our sins!
- * [49-17] Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to sin. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against sin.

sleep, asleep, fall asleep

Definition:

These terms have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To "sleep" or "be asleep" can be a metaphor meaning to "be dead." (See: Metaphor)
- The expression "fall asleep" refers to the moment when someone starts sleeping, or in its figurative sense, the moment when someone dies.
- To "sleep with the fathers" means to be dead, as one's ancestors are.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term "to sleep" or "to be asleep" could be translated as "to be dead."
- To "fall asleep" could be translated as "to suddenly be asleep" or "to start sleeping" or "to die," depending on its meaning.
- note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was "sleeping" they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as "he died."
- Some languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expression "sleep" or "asleep" does not make sense in the project language.

Bible References:

son, son of translationWords

son, son of

Definition:

The term "son" refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone's male offspring or to an adopted son.

- "Son" is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes "sons of God" is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning, "having the characteristics of." Examples of this include, "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
- The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah, son of Zadok" and "Azariah, son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: Azariah, descendant, descended from, ancestor, father, forefather, firstborn, Son of God, the Son, Son, sons of God)

Bible References:

translationWords son, son of

Examples from the Bible stories:

• [04-08] God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.

- [04-09] God said, "I will give you a son from your own body."
- [05-05] About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- [09-07] When she saw the baby, she took him as her own son.
- [11-06] God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn sons.
- [18-01] After many years, David died, and his son Solomon began to rule.
- [26-04]"Is this the son of Joseph?," they said.

Son of God, the Son, Son

Facts:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.
- Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term, "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using capital letters to begin "Son" will help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God", especially when in the same context as "the Father."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, Messiah, ancestor, father, forefather, God, God the Father, heavenly Father, Father, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, [en:obe:kt:jesus]], son, son of, sons of God))

Bible References:

Waiting

- [22-05] The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God**."
- [24-09] God had told John, "The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is the Son of God."?
- [31-08] The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "Truly, you are the Son of God."
- [37-05] Martha answered, "Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the Son of God."

- [42-10] So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- [46-06] Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- [49-09] But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

spirit, spiritual translationWords

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings that give nourishment to a person's spirit, "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in, "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" or "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include, "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person as in, "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as, "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as, "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as, "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as, "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- A "spiritual gift" could be translated as, "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives."

(See also: angel, archangel, demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, soul)

translationWords spirit, spiritual

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

• [13-03] Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.

- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my spirit."
- [48-07] All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

suffer, suffering translationWords

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase "suffer me" means to "bear with me" or "hear me out" or "listen patiently."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."
- Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."
- The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as, "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
- To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-13] God said, "I have seen the suffering of my people."
- [38-12] Jesus prayed three times, "My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**."
- [42-03] He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- [42-07] He (Jesus) said, "It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day."
- [44-05]"Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die."
- [46-04] God said, "I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake."
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

translationWords tempt, temptation

tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- The term "tempt" is also used to refer to tempting God, which means to stubbornly keep disobeying him to the point that he must respond by punishing the disobedient ones. This is also called "testing" God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong.
- In the context of tempting God, this could be translated as, "put God to the test" or "test God" or "try God's patience" or "cause God to have to punish" or "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, disobedient, Satan, devil, evil one, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning, test)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [25-01] Then Satan came to Jesus and tempted him to sin.
- [25-08] Jesus did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

test translationWords

test

Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to keep disobeying him, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "to test" could also be translated as, "to challenge" or "to cause to experience difficulties" or "to prove."
- Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
- To "put to the test" could be translated as "to test" or "to set up a challenge" or "to force to prove oneself."
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
- In some contexts, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: tempt, temptation)

Bible References:

translationWords testimony, testify

testimony, testify

Definition:

The terms "testimony" and "testify" refer to making a statement about something that one knows to be true.

- Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term is often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "give evidence" or "tell what happened."
- Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "evidence" or "what has been said" or "prophecy."
- The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as, "to show them what is true" or "to prove to them what is true."
- The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as, "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong."
- To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."

(See: ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of the testimony, ark of Yahweh, prophet, prophecy, prophety, seer, prophetess, witness, eyewitness)

Bible References:

Thessalonica, Thessalonians

Facts:

In New Testament times, Thessalonica was the capital city of Macedonia in the ancient Roman empire. The people living in that city were called the "Thessalonians."

- The city of Thessalonica was an important seaport and was also located along a major road that connected Rome to the eastern part of the Roman empire.
- Paul, along with Silas and Timothy, visited Thessalonica on his second missionary journey and as a result, a church was established there. Later, Paul also visited this city on his third missionary journey.
- Paul wrote two letters to the Christians in Thessalonica. These letters (1 Thessalonians and 2 Thessalonians) are included in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Macedonia, Paul, Saul, Rome, Roman)

Bible References:

translationWords Timothy

Timothy

Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra who became a believer in Christ as a result of Paul's ministry in his town. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (I Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul, providing guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: appoint, appointed, believer, church, Church, Greek, Grecian, minister, ministry)

Bible References:

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The terms "transgress" and "transgression" refer to breaking a command, rule, or moral code.

- Figuratively, "transgression" can also be described as "crossing a line," that is, going beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms "transgression", "sin", "iniquity", and "trespass" all include the meaning of acting against God's will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- "To trangress" could be translated as "to sin" or "to disobey" or "to rebel."
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean "sin" or "transgress" or "trespass," it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance. (See: parallelism)

(See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

The term "trust" refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A "trustworthy" person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To "trust in" Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A "trustworthy saying" refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "trust" could include, "believe" or "have faith" or "have confidence" or "depend on."
- The phrase "put your trust in" is very similar in meaning to "trust in."
- The term "trustworthy" could be translated as, "dependable" or "reliable" or "can always be trusted."

(See also: , believe, believe in, belief, confidence, confident, faith, faithful, faithfulness, true, truth, come true)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

unclean translationWords

unclean

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: clean, cleanse, defile, be defiled, demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, holy, holiness, sacrifice, offering, unholy)

Bible References:

translationWords walk

walk

Definition:

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

• "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.

- To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
- When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of "walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
- The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
- To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
- The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, honor, to honor, [[:en:obe:other:obey])

Bible References:

watch, watchman translationWords

watch, watchman

Definition:

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To "watch out" is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
- To "keep watch over" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating "watch" could include, "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
- Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

Bible References:

translationWords will of God

will of God

Definition:

The "will of God" refers to God's desires and plans.

• God's will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.

- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term "to will" means "to determine" or "to desire."

Translation Suggestions:

• The "will of God" could also be translated as, "what God desires" or "what God has planned" or "God's purpose" or "what is pleasing to God."

Bible References:

witness, eyewitness translationWords

witness, eyewitness

Definition:

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- "To witness" something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
- The expression, "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person-seeing-it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)."
- Something that is "a witness" could be translated as, "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true."
- The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as, "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach."
- "To witness to" could be translated as, "to tell what was seen" or "to testify" or "to state what happened."
- "To witness" something could be translated as "to see something" or "to experience something happen."

(See also: guilt, guilty, judge, judgment, true, truth, testimony, testify)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

• [39-02] Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many false witnesses who lied about him.

translationWords witness, eyewitness

• [39-04] The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more witnesses. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"

- [42-08]"It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are witnesses of these things."
- [43-07]"We are witnesses to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

word translationWords

word

Definition:

A "word" refers to something that someone has said.

• An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."

- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
- Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word."

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include, "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."
- When it refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Saying."

(See also: word of God, God's word, scripture)

Bible References:

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or "Old Testament." These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."
- The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."
- The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."
- When "word" occurs alone, it could be translated as "message" or "God's word" or "teachings," depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, word, Yahweh)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [25-07] In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- [33-06] So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God.

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what God's word says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in God's word must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand God's word.
- [45-10] Philip also used other scriptures to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the Word of God.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "works," "deeds," and "acts" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term "work" refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as, "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person's "work" can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as "working."

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be, "actions" or "things that are done."
- When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as, "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
- The expression, "the work of God" could be translated as, "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
- The term "work" can just be the singular of "works" as in, "every good work" or "every good deed."
- The term "work" can also have the broader meaning of "service" or "ministry." For example, the expression, "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as, "what you do for the Lord."
- The expression, "examine your own work" could also be translated as, "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
- The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as, "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See: fruit, fruitful, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, miracle, wonder, sign)

Bible References:

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term "worthy" describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To "have worth" means to be valuable or important. The term "worthless" means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term "unworthy" and the term "worthless" have related, but different meanings. To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be "worthless" means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- "Worthy" could be translated as "deserving" or "important" or "valuable."
- The word "worth" could be translated as, "value" or "importance."
- The phrase "to have worth" could also be translated as "to be valuable" or "to be important."
- The phrase, "is worth more than" could be translated as, "is more valuable than."
- Depending on the context, the term, "unworthy" could also be translated as "unimportant" or "dishonorable" or "undeserving."
- The term "worthless" could be translated as, "with no value" or "with no purpose" or "worth nothing."

(See: honor, to honor)

Bible References:

translationWords wrath, fury

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: judge, judgment, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

translationAcademy

Abstract Nouns

This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation? In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- Parts of Speech
- Sentences

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

Reason this is a translation issue: The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

from childhood you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

translationAcademy Abstract Nouns

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- 1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.
 - from childhood you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - o "Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings."
 - But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - "But being godly and content is very beneficial."
 - o "But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content."
 - "But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor* and obey God and when we are *happy* with what we have.
 - Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - o "Today the people in this house have been saved..."
 - o "Today God *has saved* the people in this house..."

- The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to **be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)
 - "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving* slowly to be"
- He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people* want to do and the reasons they want to do them."

translationAcademy Active or Passive

Active or Passive

This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- Sentence Structure
- Verbs

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.

PASSIVE: *The house* was built by my father in 2010.

PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework was seen there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

- 1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
- 2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
- 3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- 1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.
 - A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - o *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
- 2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

translationAcademy Active or Passive

• It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULB)

- It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
- It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
- 3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.
 - A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- Abstract Nouns
- Word Order

Double Negatives

This answers the question: What are double negatives?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- Parts of Speech
- Sentences

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that express the meaning of "not."

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9)

Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21)

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Most languages express the negative near the verb or at the beginning or end of the sentence. Some languages also have prefixes or suffixes that express the negative as in "unhappy," "impossible," and "useless." Some languages can also express the negative with pronouns like "none," "nothing," and "no one," with adverbs like "nowhere," and with prepositions like "without."

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that express the meaning of "not."

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did *not* happen *without* the taking of an oath, (Hebrews 7:20 ULB)

Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally "I did not see no one." It has both the word 'no' next to the verb and 'nadie,' which means "no one." It emphasis the negative, and means "I did not see anyone."
- In some languages a double negative simply means a positive. So "She is not unattractive" means "She is attractive."
- In some language the double negative weakens the adjective. So "She is not unattractive" means "She is a little bit attractive."
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative often strengthens the adjective. So "She is not unattractive" means "She is very attractive."

translationAcademy Double Negatives

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

so that they may *not* be *un*fruitful. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means "so that they will be fruitful."

All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

- 1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
- 2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "surely."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- 1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
 - For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
 - o "For we have a hight priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses"
 - so that they may *not* be *un*fruitful (Titus 3:14 ULB)
 - o "so that they may be fruitful"
- 2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "certainly."
 - Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
 - o "Be sure of this—wicked people will *certainly* be punished"
 - All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

o "All things were made through him. He made *absolutely* everything that has been made."

Next we recommend you learn about:

Verbs

translationAcademy Doublet

Doublet

This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

• Figures of Speech

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean "very old."

Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word "and." Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

Examples from the Bible

King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was "very old."

he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared "many false things to say."

as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish-not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

- 1. Translate only one of the words.
- 2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
- 3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture's way of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

- 1. Translate only one of the words.
 - You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
 - o "You have decided to prepare false things to say."
- 2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
 - King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
 - o "King David was very old."
- 3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.
 - a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
 - o "a lamb without any blemish at all"

translationAcademy Ellipsis

Ellipsis

This answers the question: What is ellipsis?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- Figures of Speech
- Sentences

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous (Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because "sinners in the assembly of the righteous" is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight." (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- 1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.
 - the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinners in the assembly* of the righteous (Psalm 1:5)
 - o "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
 - when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight." (Luke 18:40-41)
 - o "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
 - He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6)
 - o "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

translationAcademy Euphemism

Euphemism

This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

• Figures of Speech

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being "asleep" so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- 1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- 2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- 1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
 - where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
 - o "where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet"
 - o "where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole"
 - o "where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone"
- 2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.
 - whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
 - o "whether we are alive or dead"

translationAcademy Exclusive "We"

Exclusive "We"

This answers the question: What is exclusive "we"?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

• Pronouns

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we" will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of "we" to use.

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but *not you*." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow



highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we". Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we" will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples from the Bible

Forgive us our sins (Luke 11:4 ULB)

God has no sins to forgive; so languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

• Inclusive "We"

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Next we recommend you learn about:

• Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

When Masculine Words Include Women

This answers the question: How do I translate "brother" or "he" when it could refer to anyone, male or female?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- Pronouns
- Generic Noun Phrases

In some parts of the Bible, the words "men," "brothers" and "sons" refer only to men. In other parts of the Bible, those words include both men and women. When the writer meant both men and women, translators need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can be used to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says 'brothers' when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can be used for any person if it is not import whether the person is a man or women. In the example below, the pronoun is "his," but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes *his* father rejoice but a foolish child brings grief to *his* mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like "man," "brother," and "son" can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that.

Examples from the Bible

The wise *man* dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)

This verse does not contrast men and women. What it says is true of both men and women.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24-26 ULB)

Jesus was not talking about only men. What he said was true of both men and women.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, 'If a *man* dies, having no children, *his brother* must marry *his* wife and have a child for *his brother*.' (Matthew 22:24 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like "man," "brother," and "he" can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

- 1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
- 2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
- 3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

- 1. Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.
 - The wise man dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)
 - "The wise *person* dies just like the fool dies."
 - o "Wise *people* die just like fools die."
- 2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
 - For we do not want you to be ignorant, *brothers*, about the troubles we had in Asia (2 Corinthians 1:8) Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
 - o "For we do not want you to be ignorant, *brothers and sisters*, about the troubles we had in Asia" (2 Corinthians 1:8)
- 3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.
 - If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24 ULB) English speakers can change the singular pronouns "he" "himself" and "his" to plural pronouns "they" "themselves" and "their" in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.
 - o "If people want to follow me, *they* must deny *themselves*, take up *their* cross, and follow me."

translationAcademy Hendiadys

Hendiadys

This answers the question: What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it? In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- Figures of Speech
- Parts of Speech

Hendiadys is when a speaker makes a single idea more forceful by connecting two nouns or adjectives with "and" when one of the words actually describes the other.

Description

Hendiadys is when a speaker expresses a single idea by connecting two words with "and" when one of the words actually describes the other.

his own kingdom and glory (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)

Though "kingdom" and "glory" are both nouns, "glory" actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a kingdom of glory or a glorious kingdom.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys has an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Some languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that one word describes the other.

Examples from the Bible

for I will give you words and wisdom (Luke 21:15 ULB)

"Words" and "wisdom" are nouns, but in this figure of speech "wisdom" describes "words."

if you are willing and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)

"Willing" and "obedient" are adjectives, but "willing" describes "obedient."

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- 1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
- 2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
- 3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- 1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
 - for I will give you words and wisdom (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - o "For I will give you wise words"
 - that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own king-dom and glory. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own glorious kingdom."
- 2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
 - for I will give you words and wisdom (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - o "For I will give you words of wisdom"
 - that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own king-dom and glory. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom of glory."
- 3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
 - if you are willing and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)
 - o "if you are willingly obedient"
- 4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.
 - if you are willing and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULB) The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."
 - o "if you obey willingly"

Next we recommend you learn about:

• Doublet

translationAcademy Hyperbole

Hyperbole

This answers the question: What is hyperbole?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

• Figures of Speech

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like "every" or "all" to mean "many."

Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus' disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like "every" or "all" to mean something like "very many," but not "every one." (Some people may not call generalization like this "hyperbole.")

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word "hate" here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for all have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word "all" here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

translationAcademy Hyperbole

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example "all the people" could be translated as "large crowds of people."

- 1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.
 - If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)
 - "If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple."
 - The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - o "The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops.*"

Idiom

This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

• Figures of Speech

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, "You are telling me a lie")
- Do not push the envelope (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme")
- This house is under water (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value")
- We are painting the town red (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words "enter under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say."

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

translationAcademy Idiom

Examples from the Bible

"Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, "The kings on earth plan together."

the one who lifts up my head" (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- 1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- 2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- 1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
 - Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - o "...Look, we all belong to the same nation."
 - he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - o "He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it."
 - I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - o "I am not worthy that you should enter my house."
- 2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.
 - Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - o "Be all ears when I say these words to you."
 - "My eyes grow dim from grief (Psalm 6:7ULB)
 - o "I am crying my eyes out"

Inclusive "We"

This answers the question: What is inclusive "we"?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Pronouns

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but not you."

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but not you." The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.





Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we" will need understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, "Let *us* now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to *us*." (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us", they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let *us* go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Watch the video for computer (see http://youtu.be/PrMC2jdqY0A) or tablet/phone (see http://youtu.be/2K2gFlPMFVk).

Next we recommend you learn about:

translationAcademy Inclusive "We"

• Exclusive "We"

Metaphor

This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one? In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- Figures of Speech
- Simile

Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be "dead." Examples in English are "table leg," "family tree," and "the price of food is going up." Examples in biblical languages are "hand" to mean "power," "face" to mean "presence," and "clothing" to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, "The price of petrol is going up" into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor "live." It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

translationAcademy Metaphor

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his "love") is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.
- 1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. "I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst." (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is "I" and the image is "bread." Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is "fruits". The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

Translation Principles

• Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

• Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are "we" and "you" and the images are "clay and "potter." Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*" The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

- 1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
- 2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."
- 3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see **Translate Unknowns** for ideas on how to translate that image.
- 4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
- 5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
- 6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
- 7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

translationAcademy Metaphor

• For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, he fell asleep, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay, (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- o "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,"
- 2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."
 - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
 - o "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."
- 3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
 - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad. (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - o "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."
- 4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
 - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
 - o "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."
 - o "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."
- 5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
 - I will make you become fishers of men. (Mark 1:17 ULB)
 - o "I will make you become people who gather men."
 - o "Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people."
- 6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
 - Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - o "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
- 7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - o "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad. (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - o "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

• Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

translationAcademy Metonymy

Metonymy

This answers the question: What is a metonymy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

• Figures of Speech

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

Reason this is a translation issue

• If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

- 1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- 2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- 1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
 - He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - o "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying," *The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."
- 2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.
 - The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - o "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
 - o "The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David."
 - who warned you to flee from the wrath to come? (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - o "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

• Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies

Nominal Adjectives

This answers the question: How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

• Parts of Speech

Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word "rich" is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that "rich" is an adjective.

The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds, (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective "rich" comes before the word "man" and describes "man."

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last; (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective "rich" comes after the verb "be" and describes "He."

...the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and the poor must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word "rich" acts as a noun in the phrase "the rich," and it refers to rich people. The word "poor" also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use adjectives this way.
- Readers may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about many people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are the meek (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

"The meek" here are people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

- 1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.
 - The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
 - o "The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of righteous people."
 - **Blessed are** *the meek* (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
 - o "Blessed are people who are meek"

translationAcademy Parallelism

Parallelism

This answers the question: What is parallelism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

• Figures of Speech

Description

In **parallism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

- 1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
- 2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- 3. The second completes what is said in the first.
- 4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere, keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh, and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB) The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous, but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath, but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

- 1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
- 2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See Parallelism with the Same Meaning)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(See Parallelism with the Same Meaning)

Next we recommend you learn about:

• Parallelism with the Same Meaning

translationAcademy Personification

Personification

This answers the question: What is personification?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

• Figures of Speech

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

- 1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
- 2. Use the words "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
- 3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- 1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
 - sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB) God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
 - o "sin is at your door, waiting to attack you"
- 2. Use the words "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
 - sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB) This can be translated with the word "as."
 - o "sin is about to destroy you, just as a wild animal could harm a person."
- 3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.
 - even the winds and the sea obey him (Matthew 8:27 ULB) The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
 - o "He even controls the winds and the sea."

Note: We have broadened our definition of "personification" to include "zoomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and "anthropomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- Apostrophe
- Biblical Imagery Common Patterns

Reflexive Pronouns

This answers the question: What are reflexive pronouns?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- Pronouns
- Sentences

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. This page will help you understand how English shows this and will help you to see how your language handles this.

Description

Reflexive pronouns are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of referring to someone or something more than once in a sentence.
- The reflexive pronouns in English have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- to show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- to show that someone did something alone
- to show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

1. Reflexive pronouns used to that show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence

If *I* should testify about *myself* alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULB)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and *many* went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify *themselves*. (John 11:55 ULB)

2. Reflexive pronouns used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULB)

So they left the crowd, taking *Jesus* with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But *Jesus himself* was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULB)

3. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone did something alone

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain *by himself*. (John 6:15 ULB)

4. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone or something was alone

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. *It* was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by *itself*. (John 20:6-7 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

- 1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
- 2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
- 3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
- 4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."
- 5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

- 1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
 - If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)
 - o "If I should self-testify alone, my testimony would not be true."
 - Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves. (John 11:55)
 - o "Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *self-purify*."
- 2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

- He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULB)
 - o "It was he who took our sickness and bore our diseases."
- Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)
 - o "It was not Jesus who was baptizing, but his disciples were."
- 3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.
 - Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)
- 4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."
 - When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself. (John 6:15)
 - o "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again *alone* up the mountain."
- 5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.
 - He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself. (John 20:6-7 ULB)
 - "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying *in a different place*."

Rhetorical Question

This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them? In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- Figures of Speech
- Sentences

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a women would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- 1. Add the answer after the question.
- 2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- 3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- 1. Add the answer after the question.
 - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!"
 - Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - o "Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? *None of you would do that!*"
- 2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
 - What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - o "This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."
 - Is this how you insult God's high priest? (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - You should not insult God's high priest!"
 - Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!"
 - And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - o "How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!"
- 3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
 - Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - o "You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don't you?"

translationAcademy Simile

Simile

This answers the question: What is a simile?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Figures of Speech

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be "like" the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as" or "than."

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as" or "than."

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightening. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- 1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- 2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
- 3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - o "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - "For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword"
- 2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

translationAcademy Simile

• See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

- o "See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,"
- How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
 - o "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"
- 3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.
 - See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - o "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
 - How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - o "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- Metaphor
- Biblical Imagery Common Patterns

Synecdoche

This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

• Figures of Speech

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul", the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?" (Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

translationAcademy Synecdoche

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- 1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.
 - My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - o "I exalt the Lord."
 - the Pharisees said to him (Mark 2:24 ULB)
 - o "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
 - I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - \circ "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- Metonymy
- Biblical Imagery Common Metonymies

Forms of You

This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- Forms of 'You' Singular
- Forms of 'You' Dual/Plural

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural "you" for computer (see http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk) or tablet/phone (see http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd.

• Forms of 'You' - Singular to a Crowd

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal 'You' on the computer or on the tablet/phone. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

• Forms of "You" - Formal or Informal

Translating Son and Father

This answers the question: Why are these concepts important in referring to God?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- Create Faithful Translations
- Son of God and God the Father

unfoldingWord supports only Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

"Father" and "Son" are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son.

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and... a voice came out of the heavens saying, "This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him." (Matthew 3:16-17 ULB)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father.

Jesus said, "I praise you *Father*, Lord of heaven and earth,... no one knows the *Son* except the *Father*, and no one knows the *Father* except the *Son*" (Matthew 11:25-27 ULB) (See also: John 6:26-57 ULB)

Christians have found that "Father" and "Son" are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the kind of eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 28:19 ULB)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal.

no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULB)

Jesus said, "Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you... I glorified you on the earth,... Now Father, glorify me... with the glory that *I had with you before the world was created*." (John 17:1-5 ULB)

The Father *loves* the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULB)

I *love* the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULB)

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used and refer to a human "father" and "son."

Translation Strategies

- 1. Think through all the possibilities that your language has to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
- 2. If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
- 3. If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

The following pages will help you with translating "Father" and "Son."

- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Son of God, the Son, Son

How to Translate Names

This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

• Translate Unknowns

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name "Melchizedek" simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title "king of Salem" simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name "Melchizedek" means "king of righteousness," and also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beerlahairoi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

She named him *Moses* and said, "Because I drew him from the water." (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

- 1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- 2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- 3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
- 4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- 5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- 1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
 - You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - o "You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*"
 - Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you." (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- "Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you."
- 2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
 - She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water." (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - o "She named him *Moses*, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."
- 3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
 - she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - o "she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;"
- 4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- a young man named Saul (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - o "a young man named *Paul*" The footnote would look like:
 - ♦ [1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
- But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9 ULB)
 - o "But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;"
- 5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

- a young man named Saul (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - o "a young man named Saul"
- But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9 ULB) * "But __Saul__, who is also called __Paul__, was filled with the Holy Spirit;" * **It came about in Iconium that __Paul__ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01|Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that $Paul^1$ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue" (Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
 - \diamond [1] This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

• Copy or Borrow Words

translationAcademy Textual Variants

Textual Variants

This answers the question: Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- Choosing a Source Text
- Original Manuscripts

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. Sometimes the copiers added sentences by mistake or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ^{11[1]}

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

 53 [Then every man went to his own house.... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more."] $^{[2]}$

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

- 1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
- 2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:15-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand.

 ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him.

 It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." ^{16[1]}
 - o [1] Many ancient authorities insert v. 16. If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.
- 1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
 - ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." ^{16[1]}
 - o [1] Many ancient authorities insert verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*
- 2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.
 - ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." ^[1]
 - o [1] Some ancient authorities do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

• Chapter and Verse Numbers

^[2]The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:35-8:11

translationAcademy Textual Variants

- Original Manuscripts
- Terms to Know
- The Original and Source Languages

Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with? In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Sentences

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

translationAcademy Translate Unknowns

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- 1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
- 2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- 3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- 4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- 5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- 1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
 - Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly *ravenous wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals.*"
 - We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - o "We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish"
- 2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
 - o "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
 - o "your sins ... will be white like the moon"
- 3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
 - Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB) People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
 - o "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
 - We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB) People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - o "We have here only five loaves of baked crushed seed bread and two fish"
- 4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
 - I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - o "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for wild dogs"
 - We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - o "We have here only five loaves of baked food and two fish"
- 5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.
 - to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - o "to him who made the sun and the moon"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- Copy or Borrow Words
- How to Translate Names